

OWNER'S MANUAL
OPEL ASTRA /



Contents

Introduction.....	2
Getting to know your vehicle.....	5
Dashboard Instruments And Control.....	69
Infotainment System.....	98
Starting & Operating.....	108
Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS).....	144
In Case Of Emergency.....	190
Maintenance And Vehicle Care.....	205
Technical Specifications.....	229
Customer Information.....	239

Introduction

Link to Company App and Website.....	2
How To Use This Manual	3
Symbols Key	3
Safety Messages	3
Propulsion Type	3
Internal Combustion Engine (ICE).....	3
Hybrid 48 V Vehicle.....	3
Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	4
Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV).....	4

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy. This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Additionally, video tutorials for some vehicle functions can be viewed on the Infotainment Display.

Some functions are only operational when ignition is switched on, when combustion engine is running or when electric engine is ready.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual. Disregarding the description given in this manual may affect your warranty.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a workshop visit contact a qualified workshop that has the required technical information, skills and equipment. We recommend your Opel Service Partner.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving.

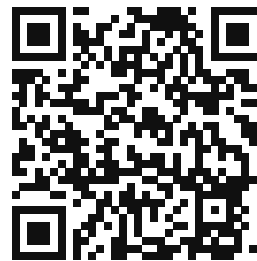
Your Opel Team

Link to Company App and Website

You can access and download the full digital version of the Owner's Manual in the myOpel webportal or on Service Box using the following link:

<https://public-servicebox.opel.com/OVddb/OV/>.

For direct access to the Owner's Manual, use the QR code below.



You may also find more details and information in the myOpel app.

Installation of the app with the following QR code:



How To Use This Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.

- This Owner's Manual depicts lefthand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical Specification".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

Symbols Key

Page references are indicated with ⇨.
⇨ means "see page".

Page references and index entries refer to the indented headings given in the section table of content.

Safety Messages

Danger

Text marked **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

Warning

Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Propulsion Type

Internal Combustion Engine (ICE)

An ICE vehicle is propelled by an internal combustion engine - diesel or petrol - only.

Hybrid 48 V Vehicle

A Hybrid 48 V vehicle is powered by both an internal combustion engine and an electric motor, which can operate together or independently depending on driving conditions.

The electric motor is supplied by a 48 unit battery that is charged exclusively through regenerative braking and energy recovery during deceleration.

The vehicle can be propelled by the electric motor alone for short distances and at low speeds.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

A PHEV is propelled by an internal combustion engine and one or two electric motor. Internal combustion engine and electric motor can operate together or alternatively, depending on driving conditions and driving style.

The high voltage battery can be charged while the vehicle is parked using the provided charging cable. Additionally, it is charged through regenerative braking and energy recovery during deceleration.

Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV)

A BEV is propelled exclusively by an electric motor only.

The high voltage battery can be charged while the vehicle is parked using the provided charging cable. Additionally, it is charged through regenerative braking and energy recovery during deceleration.

Getting to know your vehicle

Keys.....	6	Seats.....	20	Rear Window Wiper And Washer	45
Key With Foldaway Key Section.....	6	Front Seat Position	20	Exterior Lights	45
Electronic Key with Keyless Entry and Start.....	6	Manual Front Seats Adjustment	21	Lighting Control	45
Lock Cylinders	6	Power Front Seat Adjustment	22	High Beam	45
Radio Remote Control Function	7	Heated Seats	24	Headlight flash	46
Electronic Key System	7	Massage Seats	25	Headlight Height Adjustment	46
Central Locking System	9	Armrest	25	Turn light	46
Battery Replacement.....	11	Rear Seats.....	25	Emergency Signals	47
Replacement keys.....	11	Seat Belts	26	Automatic light control	47
Vehicle Security System.....	12	Three-points Seat Belt.....	27	Rear Foglamps	47
Anti-theft Locking System	12	Seat Belt Pretensioner.....	28	Automatic High Beam	47
Anti-theft Alarm System	12	Airbag System.....	28	Parking Lights	48
Immobilizer	13	Child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag systems	28	Reverse Lights	48
Windows.....	14	Front Airbags	30	Misted light covers	48
Power windows	14	Lateral Airbags	31	Matrix-LED headlights	48
Windshield.....	15	Curtain Airbags	31	Hood.....	67
Sun visors.....	16	Airbag deactivation	32		
Mirrors.....	17	Child Restraints.....	33		
Folding Mirrors	17	Child Restraints Introduction	33		
Heated Mirrors	17	Child Restraint Installation Locations	36		
Convex Shape	17	Steering Wheel	41		
Rearview Display Mirror	18	Steering Wheel Adjustment	41		
Electric Adjustment	18	Steering Wheel Controls	41		
Parking Assist	18	Horn	42		
Head Restraints	18	Ignition Switch	42		
Head Restraints Position.....	19	Power Button	43		
Front Head Restraints.....	19	Wipers and washers.....	43		
Rear Head Restraints.....	20	Wipers and Washers Control Stalk	43		

Keys

Key With Foldaway Key Section

Caution

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

⚠ Danger

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause, depending on version, steering wheel lock.

Caution

The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks. In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.



Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

Electronic Key With Keyless Entry And Start



⚠ Warning

The electronic key can affect a pacemaker.
Keep the electronic key away from the breast.


Push the latch to extract the integral key.


Lock Cylinders

Designed to free-wheel if they are forcefully rotated without the correct key or if the correct key is not fully inserted. To reset, insert the correct key only half way and turn cylinder until its slot is vertical, remove key then re-insert it. If the cylinder still free-wheels, insert the key only half way and turn the key through 180° and repeat operation.

Radio Remote Control Function



 Locks the vehicle

 Locks or unlocks the tailgate, the fuel filler flap and all doors or the tailgate only

 Unlocks the vehicle

Enables operation of the following functions via the use of the remote control buttons:

- Central Locking System ⇒ page 9
- Anti-Theft Locking System ⇒ page 12
- Anti-Theft Alarm System ⇒ page 12
- Tailgate Operation ⇒ page 63

- Power windows ⇒ page 14
- Mirrors Folding ⇒ page 17
- Vehicle Locator Lighting ⇒ page 52

The remote control has a range of up to 50 m, but may also be much less due to external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Electronic Key System

Warning

The electronic key can affect a pacemaker. Keep the electronic key away from the breast.



Enables a keyless operation of the following functions:

- Central locking system ⇒ page 9
- Power tailgate ⇒ page 64
- Ignition switching on and starting the engine ⇒ page 109

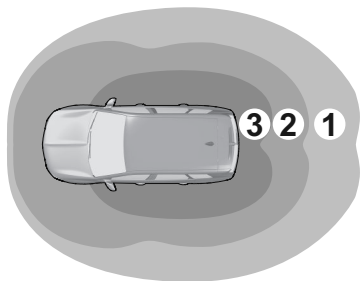
The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver's person.

For reasons of security, the electronic key may be equipped with a motion sensor. If so, starting the vehicle is not possible when the electronic key has not been moved for a certain time.

When trying to start the vehicle, a corresponding message appears in the cluster. Move the electronic key and try to start the vehicle again.

Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control ⇒ page 7.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.





Zone 1: welcome lighting on approaching the vehicle (between 2 and 5 metres from the vehicle).

Zone 2: automatic locking on moving away from the vehicle (about 2 metres from the vehicle).

Zone 3: automatic unlocking on approaching the vehicle (between 1 and 2 metres from the vehicle).

Note

If the electronic key remains for more than 15 minutes in zone 1, automatic unlocking is deactivated.

Unlock the vehicle by pressing  or  on the remote control or touch the sensor of the driver's door handle to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic locking and unlocking is activated again.

Info Display ⇨ page 94

Unlocking

Pass a hand behind the door handle of a front door to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate button.

Unlocking mode can be set in the Info Display. Two settings are selectable:

- Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind the driver's door handle.
- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind the passenger's door handle or by pressing the tailgate button.
- Only the tailgate will be unlocked by pressing the tailgate button.

Locking

Press marking on the front door handles. Entire vehicle will be locked.

If the vehicle is not closed properly, the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted and a warning chime sounds. Keep the hand behind the door handle or keep the tailgate button pressed to close the windows.

Unlocking and opening the tailgate


The tailgate can be unlocked and opened hands-free by pushing the button under the tailgate moulding when the electronic key is in range.

The doors remain locked ⇨ page 9

Automatic locking after driving off


This system allows automatic locking as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 10 km/h.

If the vehicle is not closed properly, the automatic locking does not take place. This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied

by illumination of  in the cluster, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

Activation or deactivation



With the ignition on, press  and a corresponding message is displayed. The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Automatic relock after unlocking

This feature automatically relocks the vehicle a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided vehicle has not been opened.

Central Locking System

Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

A pull on an interior door handle unlocks and opens the respective door.

When the driver's door only function is activated in the vehicle personalisation settings, only the driver's door unlocks when its interior handle is pulled. When the function is deactivated all doors will be unlocked.

Regardless of the vehicle personalisation setting, all doors will be unlocked when the interior handle of any other door than the driver's door is pulled.

Vehicle Customization ⇒ page 99

Note


In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.


If the vehicle is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work. Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers.

Central Locking Button

Locks or unlocks all doors, the load compartment and fuel filler flap from inside the passenger compartment.



Press  to lock. The LED in the button illuminates.

Press  again to unlock. The LED in the button extinguishes.

Operation with the key in case of a central locking system fault

In case of a fault, e.g. vehicle battery or remote control / electronic key battery is

discharged, the vehicle can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.

Manual Unlocking



The lock cylinder in the driver's door is covered by a cap.

Depending on version, to remove the cap extract the built-in key blade from the housing or use the foldable key. Insert the key into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upwards.



Insert the key into the lock cylinder and turn it anti-clockwise. After locking, cover the lock cylinder with the cap: insert the cap with the lower side in the recesses, swivel and push the cap until it engages at the upper side. By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated. The other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle. The load compartment and fuel filler flap will possibly not be unlocked.

Manual Locking



Manually lock the front doors by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder. With working central locking system the vehicle will be locked

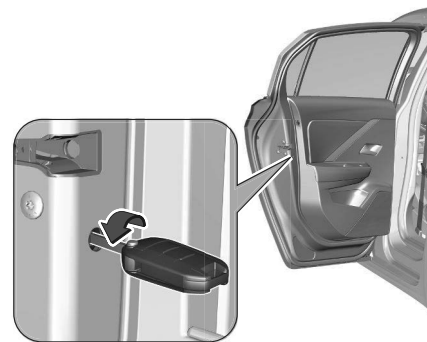


To lock the other doors, open the rear doors. Ensure that child lock is deactivated. Insert key carefully and turn it to the inner side of the doors. Then, remove key. Close the doors. The fuel filler flap and tailgate are possibly not locked.

Child Locks

 **Warning**

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.




Turn the child lock in the rear door outwards to the horizontal position by

using a key. The door cannot be opened from the inside.

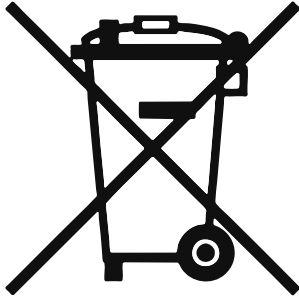
To deactivate, turn the child lock in the opposite direction.

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced.

In the event of a discharged battery,  illuminates and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Driver Information Centre ⇒ page 94.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. To unclip the cover insert a small screwdriver between the back cover and the remote control.
2. Remove the back cover from the remote control.
3. Extract the flat battery from its location
4. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
5. Clip the cover in place.

Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.

- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- The battery voltage is too high.
- Frequent, repeated operation of the radio remote control while not in range.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time. Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Manual unlocking ⇒ page 9.

Replacement Keys

The key number is specified on a detachable tag. The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobilizer system.

Locks ⇒ page 6

Central Locking ⇒ page 9

Starting the engine ⇒ page 42

Remote control function ⇒ page 7

The code number of the adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement adapter.

Wheel changing ⇒ page 193

Vehicle Security System

Anti-Theft Locking System

Warning

Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.


The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed and the electronic key must be outside the vehicle otherwise the system cannot be activated.

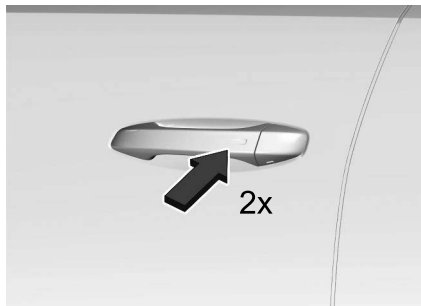
Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system.

This is not possible with the central locking button.

Activating



Press  on the radio remote control or touch the sensor of the driver's door handle twice within five seconds.



Anti-Theft Alarm System

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the anti-theft locking system.

It monitors:

- Doors, tailgate, bonnet.
- Passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment.
- Vehicle inclination, e.g. if it is raised.
- Ignition.

If the sunroof remains open, the passenger compartment is not monitored.

During temperature preconditioning, the passenger compartment and the vehicle inclination are not monitored.

Activation

All doors, the load compartment, the engine compartment and the sunroof must be closed.

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle.

The system is self-activated 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

If a door or the tailgate is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked.

However, the anti-theft alarm is selfactivated after 45 seconds.

Note

The automatic vehicle locking function does not activate the anti-theft alarm system.

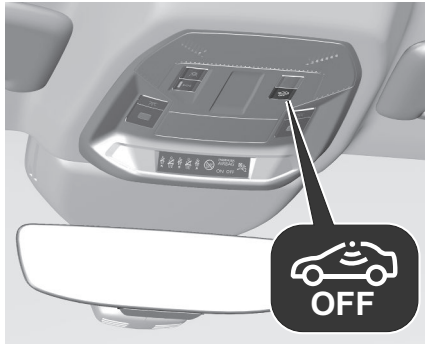
To activate the anti-theft alarm system, lock the vehicle by using the radio remote control or by touching the sensor on the driver's door handle.

Central locking system ⇨ page 9.

Note



Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers and open windows, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination




Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm.

Also, switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.


1. Close tailgate, bonnet, windows.
2. Switch off ignition and press  within ten seconds until the LED in the button  illuminates.
3. Leave the vehicle and close the doors.
4. Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

Indication

The LED in the  button flashes if the anti-theft alarm system is activated. The hazard warning lights illuminate for a few seconds.


Deactivation


Radio remote control: Unlocking the

vehicle by pressing  on the key deactivates the anti-theft alarm system. The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the builtin key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

Alarm

When triggered, the alarm siren sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.


The anti-theft alarm can be deactivated by pressing  or switching on the ignition.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the LED in the button . They will flash quickly four times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the radio remote control.

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

If the battery has been reconnected (e.g. after maintenance work), wait for ten minutes to restart the engine.

Fault

If the LED in the button  illuminates permanently when switching on the ignition, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Locking the vehicle without activation of the anti-theft alarm

Lock the vehicle by locking the front door with the key.

Immobilizer

The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.

The immobilizer is activated automatically.

Note

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags may cause interference with the key. Do not have it placed near the key when starting the vehicle.

The immobilizer does not lock the doors. Always lock the vehicle after leaving it ⇨ page 9.

Switch on the anti-theft alarm system ⇨ page 12.

Emergency operation of electronic key ⇨ page 108.

Windows

Power Windows

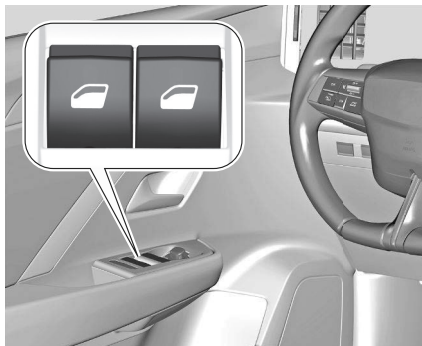
Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them.

Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.



Switch on the ignition to operate the power windows.

Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Safety function

If the window glass encounters resistance of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.


Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled.

To stop movement, release the switch.

Child safety system for rear windows

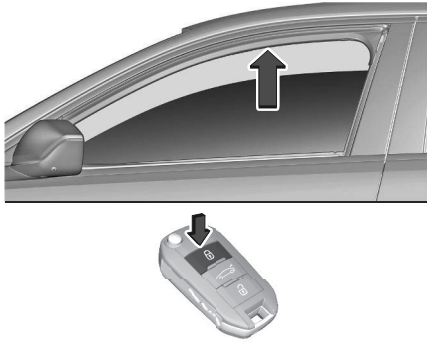



Press  to deactivate rear door power windows; the LED illuminates.

To activate, press  again..

Closing windows from outside

The windows can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold  to close windows. Release the button to stop window movement.

If the windows are fully closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice. This feature also closes the sunroof + sunshade if open.

Note

Opening via remote is not supported to avoid unintended opening.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

Initialising the power windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting

the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed on the cluster, Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull the switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
4. Push the switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.
6. Close the window completely by pulling the switch again.

Repeat for each window.

Fault

In some circumstances, the power windows will be opened repeatedly or may not operate correctly.

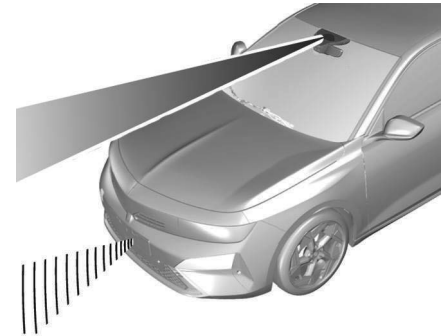
Proceed as follows:

1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull the switch three times in less than ten seconds to trigger the safety function.

4. The safety function is not active anymore. Pull the switch a fourth time until the window is completely closed.
5. Release the switch and pull the switch again for at least one second.
6. Open the window completely by pushing the switch.
7. Close the window completely by pulling the switch again.

Windshield

Windshield stickers



Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice. Otherwise, the detection zone of the rain sensor / light sensor and the view area

of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted. ⇒ page 43

Windshield replacement

Caution


If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windshield replacement is performed accurately according to Manufacturer specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from these systems.


Safety function

If the window glass encounters resistance of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.


Heated windshield



Operated by touching . LED illuminates when heated windshield is activated.

The heating works only with freezing outside temperatures and switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature. Touch  once more during the same ignition cycle to allow the heating to operate again.

Heated rear window

Activated by pressing . The heated exterior mirrors will also be activated. The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.



Heated mirrors ⇒ page 17.

Sun Visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling. If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

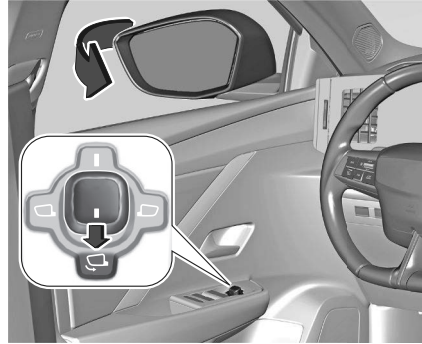
Mirrors


Folding Mirrors



For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Manual Electric Folding



To fold or unfold both exterior mirrors, select the folding function by turning the control to .

If an electrically folded mirror is manually unfolded, only the other mirror will be unfolded electrically.

Automatic Electric Folding

When the vehicle is unlocked, the mirrors swing to their normal mounting position. When the vehicle is locked, the mirrors are folded down.

Heated Mirrors



Operated by pressing .

The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Heated rear window ⇨ page 16.

Convex Shape

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Side blind spot alert ⇨ page 164.

Rearview Display Mirror



To adjust the mirror, move the mirror housing in the desired direction.

Manual Anti-dazzle



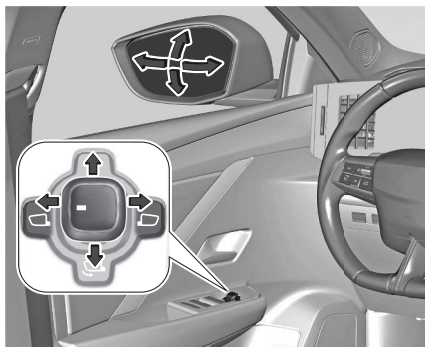
To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Automatic Anti-Dazzle



Dazzle from following vehicles is automatically reduced, when driving in the dark.

Electric Adjustment



Select the relevant exterior mirror by turning the control.

Then swivel the control to adjust the selected mirror.

Parking Assist


This function automatically tilts the mirrors downwards to assist with parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.

The mirrors tilt at different angles. If necessary, the mirrors can be tilt additionally.

The mirror glasses return to their original positions:

- a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear
- once the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h
- when the engine is switched off

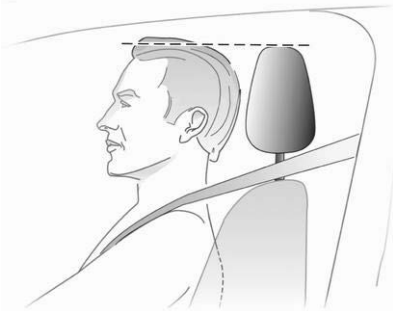
The function can be activated or deactivated in the settings app  in the Info Display.

Head Restraints

Head Restraints Position

 **Warning**

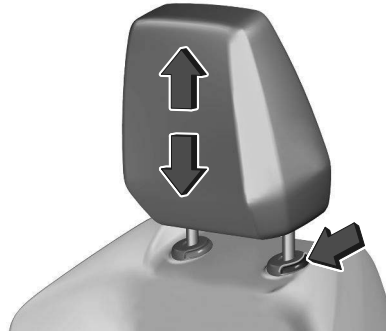
Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.



The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

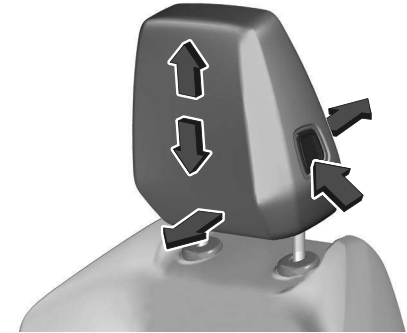
Front Head Restraints

Height Adjustment



Pull the head restraint upwards or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

Longitudinal Adjustment



Press the catch and move the head restraint upwards, downwards, forwards or backwards until the desired position is adjusted.

Removal

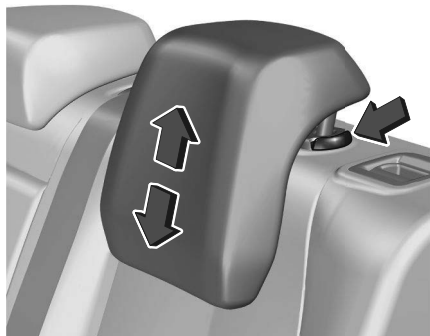
Pull the head restraint upwards, press the catch to release and pull the head restraint out.

Refitting

1. Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest
2. Push the head restraint fully down
3. Adjust the height of the head restraint

Rear Head Restraints

Height adjustment



Pull the head restraint upwards or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

Removal

E.g. when using a child restraint system
⇒ page 28

Pull the head restraint upwards, press the catch to release and pull the head restraint out.

Refitting

1. Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest
2. Push the head restraint fully down
3. Adjust the height of the head restraint

Seats

Front Seat Position

⚠ Warning

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

⚠ Warning

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

⚠ Danger

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

⚠ Warning

Never store any objects under the seats.



- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact

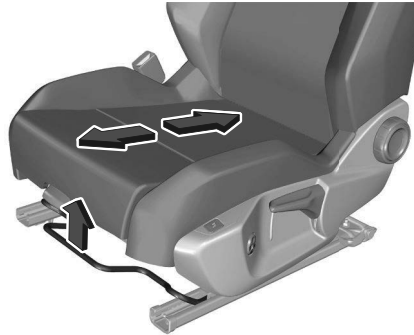
between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.

- Adjust seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and shoulders are on the backrest.
- Adjust the steering wheel ⇒ page 41.
- Adjust the head restraint ⇒ page 19.
- Adjust the height of the seat belt.
- Adjust the thigh support so that there is a space approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

Manual Front Seats Adjustment

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

Longitudinal adjustment



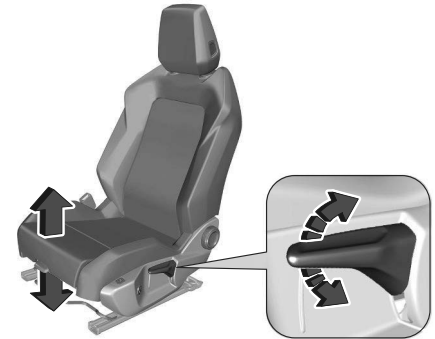
Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Backrest inclination



Rotate the wheel forwards or backwards to recline the seat.

Seat height

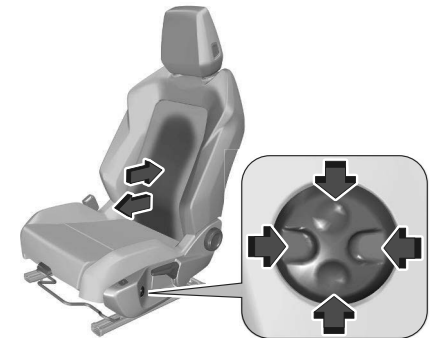


Lever pumping motion

up: seat higher

Down: seat lower

Lumbar support



Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements. Press and hold the front or rear of the switch to increase or decrease the lumbar support. Press and hold the top or bottom of the switch to raise or lower the lumbar support.

Thigh support



Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

Power Front Seat Adjustment

Warning

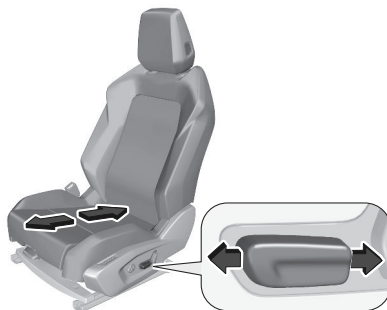
Care must be taken when operating the power seats. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children. Objects could become trapped. Keep a close watch on the seats when adjusting them.

Vehicle passengers should be informed accordingly.

Caution

Never store objects beneath a power seat. Ensure that there are no objects blocking the moving area. Risk of damage to the controls.

Longitudinal adjustment



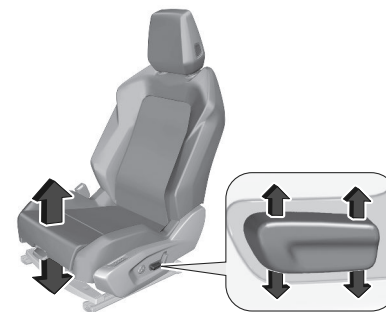
Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Backrest Angle



Tilt the control forwards or rearwards.

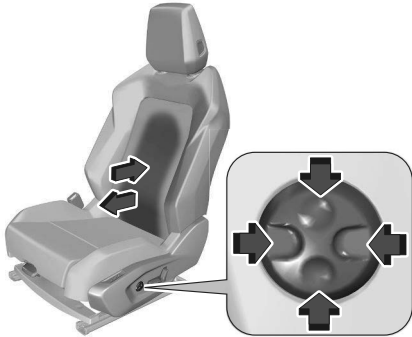
Cushion Height and Angle



Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height. Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

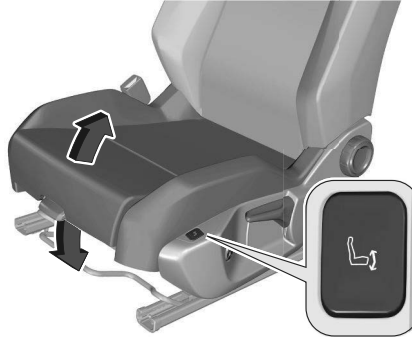
Lumbar support

Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.



Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

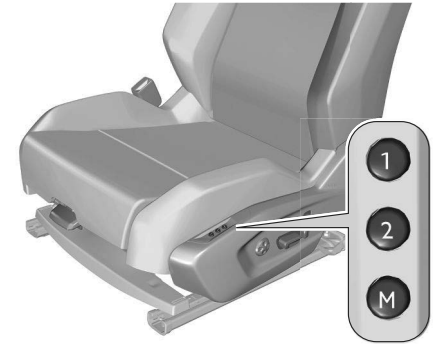
Thigh support



Press and hold the front or rear of the button to raise or lower the thigh support.

Memory Settings

Associated with the electrically-adjusted driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorised, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes. It records the electric adjustments made to the seat and door mirrors. This also takes into account the electric settings for the extended head-up display.



Using buttons 1/2/M

- Enter the vehicle and switch the ignition on.
- Adjust the seat, the door mirrors and the extended head-up display.
- Press button M, then press button 1 or 2 within 4 seconds.

An audible signal confirms the memorisation. Memorising a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

Warning

While the seat is moving, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

With the ignition on or engine running

- Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal sounds when adjustment is complete.

You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat adjustment controls. A stored position cannot be recalled while driving. The recalling of stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Comfort entry function

The Comfort entry function makes it easier to get in and out of the vehicle. After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the front seat moves backwards automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry into the vehicle.

When switching on the ignition, the front seat moves forwards to the stored driving position.


- ⚙ It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Heated Seats




Activation/Deactivation

Press the button in the centre of the seat adjustment control or press the climate control shortcut below the infotainment screen to access the app.

In the **Seats** touch screen application , select the **Heating Functions** tab.

- Select the driver or passenger seat.

The corresponding page is displayed with the last memorised settings.

If the settings are suitable, press  to activate/deactivate the function in the **Seats** application.

If no action is taken, the display returns to its initial state.

The function status is not memorised when the ignition is switched off. Seat heating will always start at level **"3"** (High) when initially activated and you can reduce to **"2"** or **"1"**.

Changing settings

- In the **Heating Functions** page, select the relevant seat.
- Select an intensity from the three preset levels: **"1"** (Low), **"2"** (Normal) or **"3"** (High). The settings are memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Restriction

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

Warning

Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).

To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Massage Seats



System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.

This system operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of the Stop & Start.

Activation/Deactivation

In the **Seats** touch screen application, select the **Massage** tab.

- Select the driver or passenger seat. The corresponding page is displayed with the last memorised settings.

If the settings are suitable, press to activate/deactivate the function in the **Seats** application.

If no action is taken, the display returns to its initial state.

The function status is not memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Changing settings

- In the **Massage** page, select the seat concerned.
- Select a massage intensity from the three preset levels: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High).
- Select another type of massage from those offered.

The modifications are taken into account immediately and memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Once activated, the system starts a one hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes at rest.

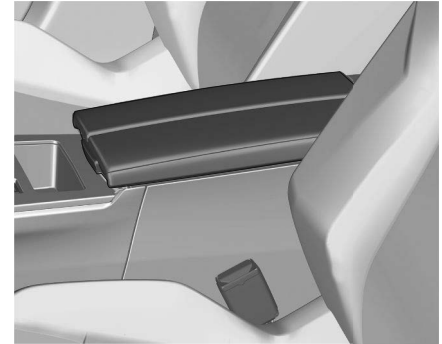
The system stops automatically at the end of the cycle.

The function can also be changed in the widget area on the passenger side of the center screen.

Information Display ⇒ page 94

Otherwise, the seat app can be directly opened via the button on the side of the seat.

Armrest



Storage compartment ⇒ page 55.

Rear Seats

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

⚠ Warning

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

Folding backrests. ⇒ page 26

Folding rear seats

Folding Left Or Right Backrest



Pull the release lever and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion. To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly. Make sure that the belts are positioned correctly and stay clear of the folding area.

Warning

First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks near the release levers are no longer visible.

Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

Seat Belts



The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, holding the occupants in the seat position. Therefore the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

Warning

Fasten seat belt before each trip. In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time.
Child restraint system ⇒ page 28.

Periodically check all parts of the belt system for damage, soiling and proper functionality.
Have damaged components replaced.
After an accident, have the seat belts and triggered belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.

Note

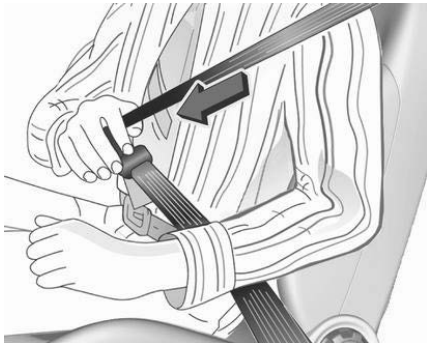
Make sure that the belts are not damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Note

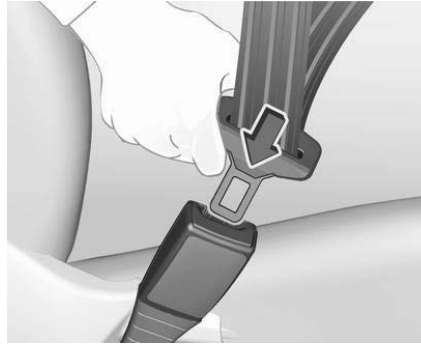
Use the belt buckle intended for the respective seat belt when fastening in order to ensure proper functionality.

Three-Points Seat Belt

Fasten




Withdraw the seat belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into the buckle. Make sure the seat belt lies across the shoulder and fits tightly to the body while driving.



Loose or bulky clothing prevents the seat belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the seat belt and your body.

⚠ Warning

The seat belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Seat belt reminder . ⇨ page 79
Height adjustment if applicable.

Unfasten



To release the seat belt, press red button on seat belt buckle and guide the seat belt back.

Using seat belts while pregnant



Warning


The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Seat Belt Pretensioner

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts are tightened by seat belt pretensioners.

Warning

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of control indicator  ⇒ page 80. Triggered belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

Note


Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners. Do not make any modifications to belt pretensioner components as this will

invalidate the operating permit of your vehicle.

Belt Force Limiters

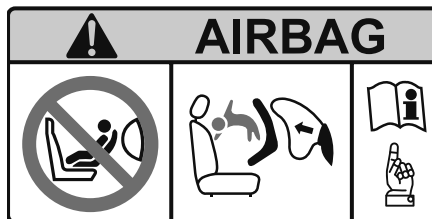
Stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

Seat Belt Reminder

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated by a control indicator  for the respective seat in the roof console ⇒ page 79.

Airbag System

Child Restraint Systems On Front Passenger Seat With Airbag Systems



The airbag label is located on both sides of the front passenger sun visor.

Danger

NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it: DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

EN: NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Nach hinten gerichtete Kindersitze NIEMALS auf einem Sitz verwenden, der durch einen davor befindlichen AKTIVEN AIRBAG geschützt ist, da dies den TOD oder SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN DES KINDES zur Folge haben kann.

FR: NE JAMAIS utiliser un siège d'enfant orienté vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE ACTIF placé devant lui, sous peine d'infliger des BLESSURES GRAVES, voire MORTELLES à l'ENFANT.

ES: NUNCA utilice un sistema de retención infantil orientado hacia atrás en un asiento protegido por un AIRBAG FRONTAL ACTIVO. Peligro de MUERTE o LESIONES GRAVES para el NIÑO.

RU: ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ устанавливать детское удерживающее устройство лицом назад на сиденье автомобиля, оборудованном фронтальной подушкой безопасности, если ПОДУШКА НЕ ОТКЛЮЧЕНА! Это может привести к СМЕРТИ или СЕРЬЕЗНЫМ ТРАВМАМ РЕБЕНКА.

NL: Gebruik NOOIT een achterwaarts gericht kinderzitje op een stoel met een ACTIEVE AIRBAG ervoor, om DODELIIK of ERNSTIG LETSEL van het KIND te voorkomen.

DA: Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt autostol på et forsæde med AKTIV AIRBAG, BARNET kan komme i LIVSFARE eller komme ALVORLIGT TIL SKADE.

SV: Använd ALDRIG en bakåtvänd barnstol på ett säte som skyddas med en framförvarande AKTIV AIRBAG. DÖDSFALL eller ALLVARLIGA SKADOR kan drabba BARNET.

FI: ÄLÄ KOSKAAN sijoita taaksepäin suunnattua lasten turvaistuinta istuimelle, jonka edessä on AKTIIVINEN TURVATYNY, LAPSI VOI KUOLLA tai VAMMAUTUA VAKAVASTI.

NO: Bakovervendt barnesikringsutstyr må ALDRI brukes på et sete med AKTIV KOLLISJONSPUTE foran, da det kan føre til at BARNET utsettes for LIVSFARE og fare for ALVORLIGE SKADER.

PT: NUNCA use um sistema de retenção para crianças voltado para trás num banco protegido com um AIRBAG ACTIVO na frente do mesmo, poderá ocorrer a PERDA DE VIDA ou FERIMENTOS GRAVES na CRIANÇA.

IT: Non usare mai un sistema di sicurezza per bambini rivolto all'indietro su un sedile protetto da AIRBAG ATTIVO di fronte ad esso: pericolo di MORTE o LESIONI GRAVI per il BAMBINO!

EL: ΠΟΤΕ μη χρησιμοποιείτε παιδικό κάθισμα ασφαλείας με φορά προς τα πίσω σε κάθισμα που προστατεύεται από μετωπικό ΕΝΕΡΓΟ ΑΕΡΟΣΑΚΟ, διότι το παιδί μπορεί να υποστεί ΘΑΝΑΣΙΜΟ ή ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ.

PL: NIE WOLNO montować fotelika dziecięcego zwróconego tyłem do kierunku jazdy na fotelu, przed którym znajduje się WŁĄCZONA PODUSZKA POWIETRZNA.

Niezastosowanie się do tego zalecenia może być przyczyną ŚMIERCI lub POWAŻNYCH OBRAŻEŃ u DZIECKA.

TR: Arkaya bakan bir çocuk emniyet sistemini KESİNLİKLE önünde bir AKTİF HAVA YASTIĞI ile korunmakta olan bir koltukta kullanmayınız. ÇOCUK ÖLEBİLİR veya AĞIR ŞEKİLDE YARALANABİLİR.

UK: НИКОЛИ не використовуйте систему безпеки для дітей, що встановлюється обличчям назад, на сидінні з УВІМКНЕНОЮ ПОДУШКОЮ БЕЗПЕКИ, інакше це може призвести до СМЕРТІ чи СЕРІОЗНОГО ТРАВМУВАННЯ ДИТИНИ.

HU: SOHA ne használjon hátrafelé néző biztonsági gyerekléssel előlről AKTÍV LÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen, mert a GYERMEK HALÁLÁT vagy KOMOLY SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.

HR: NIKADA nemojte koristiti sustav zadržavanja za djecu okrenut prema natrag na sjedalu s AKTIVNIM ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, to bi moglo dovesti do SMRTI ili OZBILJNIH OZLJEDA za DIJETE.

SL: NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega varnostnega sedeža, obrnjenega v nasprotni smeri vožnje, na sedež z AKTIVNO ČELNO ZRAČNO BLAZINO, saj pri tem obstaja nevarnost RESNIH ali SMRTNIH POŠKODB za OTROKA.

SR: NIKADA ne koristiti bezbednosni sistem za decu u kome su deca okrenuta unazad na sedištu sa AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred sedišta zato što DETE može da NASTRADA ili da se TEŠKO POVREDI.

МК: НИКОГАШ не користете детско седиште свртено наназад на седиште заштитено со АКТИВНО ВОЗДУШНО ПЕРНИЧЕ пред него, затоа што детето може ДА ЗАГИНЕ или да биде ТЕШКО ПОВРЕДЕНО.

BG: НИКОГА не използвайте детска седалка, гледаща назад, върху седалка, която е защитена чрез АКТИВНА ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА пред нея - може да

се стигне до СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на ДЕТЕТО.

RO: Nu utilizați NICIODATĂ un scaun pentru copil îndreptat spre partea din spate a mașinii pe un scaun protejat de un AIRBAG ACTIV în fața sa; acest lucru poate duce la DECESUL sau VĂTĂMAREA GRAVĂ a COPILULUI.

CS: NIKDY nepoužívejte dětský zádržný systém instalovaný proti směru jízdy na sedadle, které je chráněno před sedadlem AKTIVNÍM AIRBAGEM. Mohlo by dojít k VÁŽNĚMU PORANĚNÍ nebo ÚMRTÍ DÍTĚTE.

SK: NIKDY nepoužívajte detskú sedačku otočenú vzad na sedadle chránenom AKTÍVNYM AIRBAGOM, pretože môže dôjsť k SMRTI alebo VÁŽNYM ZRANENIAM DIEŤAŤA.

LT: JOKIU BŪDU nemontuokite atgal atgręžtos vaiko tvirtinimo sistemas sėdynėje, prieš kurią įrengta AKTYVI ORO PAGALVĖ, nes VAIKAS GALI ŽŪTI arba RIMTAI SUSIŽALOTI.

LV: NEKĀDĀ GADĪJUMĀ neizmantojiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļi sēdvietā, kas tiek aizsargāta ar tās priekšā uzstādītu AKTĪVU DROŠĪBAS SPILVE-

NU, jo pretējā gadījumā BĒRNS var gūt SMAGAS TRAUMAS vai IET BOJĀ.

ET: ÄRGE kasutage tahapoole suunatud lapseturvaistet istmel, mille ees on AKTIIVSE TURVAPADJAGA kaitstud iste, sest see võib põhjustada LAPSE SURMA või TÕSISE VIGASTUSE.

MT: QATT tuża trażżin għat-tfal li jħares lejn in-naħa ta' wara fuq sit protett b'AIRBAG ATTIV quddiemu; dan jista' jikkawża l-MEWT jew ĠRIEHI SERJI lit-TFAL.

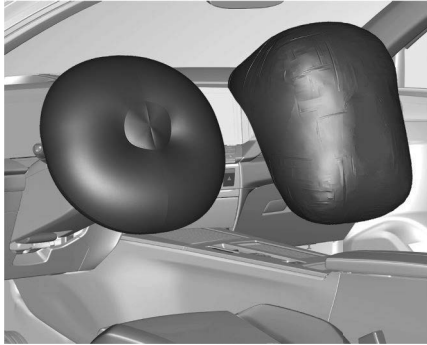
GA: Ná húsáid srian sábháilteachta linbh cúil RIAMH ar shuíochán a bhfuil mála aeir ag feidhmiú os a chomhair. Tá baol BÁIS nó GORTÚ DONA don PHÁISTE ag baint leis.

Additionally, for safety reasons a forward-facing child restraint system must only be used subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table ⇒ page 36. Airbag deactivation ⇒ page 32.

Front Airbags

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

Warning

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position. Fasten the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

Seat position ⇨ page 20.

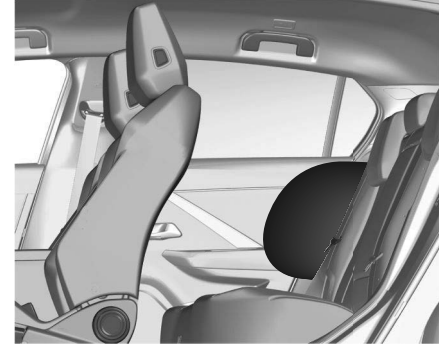
Lateral Airbags



The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest and in the rear outer seat backrests. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**. The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.



Note

Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

Curtain Airbags

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

Warning

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.



Airbag Deactivation


The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated for child restraint system on the passenger seat according to the instructions in the table.

The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active. The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch in the glovebox.




Use the ignition key to choose the position:

OFF  : front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision, control indicator **OFF**  illuminates continuously in the centre console.

ON  : front passenger airbag is active


Note


After turning the key-operated switch to position **OFF** , keep on turning towards this position until key is removed.

Danger

Deactivate passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table. Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.



If the control indicator  illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.

If the control indicator  illuminates after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system is deactivated. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system is not discernible, therefore no person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat.

Consult a workshop immediately if neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.

Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.

Status remains until the next change.

Control indicator for airbag deactivation

Child Restraints

Child Restraints Introduction

Danger

Make sure that children below sufficient size and weight are protected using a suitable child restraint system. Never place a child on the lap.

Danger

If using a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag system for the front passenger seat must be deactivated. This also applies to certain forward-facing child restraint systems as indicated in the Child Restraints table.

Child Restraints table ⇒ page 36.

Airbag deactivation ⇒ page 32.

Airbag label ⇒ page 28.

We recommend a child restraint system which is tailored specifically to the vehicle. For further information, contact your workshop.

In case of any interference of the child restraint system with vehicle seat head restraint, adjust or remove the corresponding head restraint.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system. The given restrictions in the table refer to a test body, which is the maximum envelope of all existing child restraint systems. Make sure that the front seats do not interfere with the used child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use

of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

Only drive with the driver seat correctly adjusted ⇒ page 20.

Danger

Extreme Hazard!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

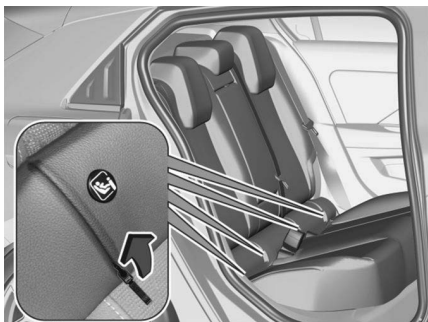
Child restraint systems can be fastened with:

- Three-point seat belt
- ISOFIX brackets
- Top-tether anchor

Three-Point Seat Belt

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. After fastening the child restraint system the seat belt has to be tightened.

ISOFIX Brackets



Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the child restraint installation location table ⇒ page 36.

ISOFIX brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest. To get access to the ISOFIX brackets, first pull the zipper. An i-Size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according to UN Regulation No. 129. All i-Size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-Size, child restraint installation table ⇒ page 36.

When fastening ISOFIX child restraint systems on adjustable passenger seats, first incline the backrest as far as


necessary backwards in order to get access to the ISOFIX brackets. After the proper fastening of the ISOFIX child restraint system, incline the backrest forward again. Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets.



i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol, see illustration.

Top-Tether Anchors



Top-tether anchors are marked with the symbol  for a child seat. In addition to the ISOFIX brackets, fasten the Top-tether strap to the Top-tether anchors. ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the child restraint installation location table ⇒ page 36.

Selecting the right system

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system. Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident. Do not use forward facing child restraint system at all seats when child's weight is below 13 kg or the child's body size is less than 76 cm and up to the age of 15 months.

Suitable are child restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems. The following child restraints are recommended for the following weight classes:

- Römer Baby-Safe 3 i-Size Size: 40 - 83 cm Age: from birth to 15 months

Weight: up to 13 kg with or without its ISOFIX base Suitable for rearward facing installation only.

- RömerTriFix 2 i-Size Size: 76 - 105 cm Age: from 15 months to 4 years Weight: from 9 to 22 kg Installed with ISOFIX and Top-tether mountings. Suitable for forward facing installation only.
- Römer Kidfix i-Size Size: 100 - 150 cm Age: from 3.5 to 12 years Weight: from 15 to 36 kg with or without ISOFIX mountings The child is restrained by the seat belt.

 **Warning**

If a Universal ISOFIX child restraint system is not fixed to all 3 anchorages, it will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously or fatally injured.

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Child seat at the front: Adjust the front passenger seat to the highest and fully back longitudinal position with the backrest straightened.

Child seat at the rear: Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the

backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" or the "rearward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

In case of any interference of child restraint system with vehicle seat head rest, adjust or remove the corresponding vehicle seat head restraint.

Please follow child restraint manufacturers instructions to install corresponding child restraints in vehicle. For semi-universal or vehicle specific child restraint system (ISOFIX or belted child restraint system), see the vehicle list provided in the user manual of the child restraint system.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following table.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

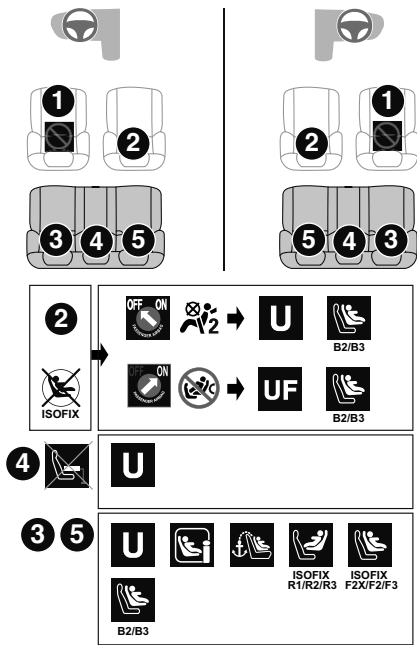
When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

Note

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

Child Restraint Installation Locations



Key



Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.



Front passenger airbag **deactivated**.





Front passenger airbag **activated**.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "**rearward facing**" and/or "**forward facing**" (U) for groups **0, 0+, 1, 2** or **3** or dedicated to children between 40 to 150 cm in size.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing"** (UF) for groups **1, 2** and **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.



Seat position autorised for the installation of a "**forward facing**" **i-Size** child seat



Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat with support leg.



Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of an **universal ISOFIX child seat**.



Presence of a TOP TETHER anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorizing the installation of a "**forward facing**" **universal ISOFIX child seat**.



"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3: ISOFIX** large size child seat



"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers**.
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.



Booster child seat, using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

- **B2: reduced width booster seat.**
- **B3: full width booster seat.**



Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.
For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table "**Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats**".



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.



ISOFIX "carrycot" type child seat :

- **L1** : left-hand facing.
- **L2** : right-hand facing.

In compliance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) as well as the largest ISOFIX and i-Size child seats on seat positions equipped with ISOFIX mountings in the vehicle.

Yes : Suitable for fitment of the designated category of the child restraint system.

No : Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of the child restraint system.

	Front passenger seat	Rear outer seats	Rear centre seat
Seat Number	(2)	(3; 5)	(4)
Position compatible with a universal child seat ⁽¹⁾	Yes ^{(2), (3), (4)}	Yes	Yes ⁽⁵⁾
Position compatible with an i-Size child seat	No	Yes	No ⁽⁵⁾
Position equipped with a Top-tether fixing	No	Yes	No
Carrycot type of child seat	No	No	No
Rearward facing ISOFIX child seat	No	R3 ^{(6), (8)}	No
Forward facing ISOFIX child seat	No	F3 ⁽⁸⁾	No
Booster child seat	B3 ^{(7), (8), (9)}	B3 ⁽⁸⁾	No

(1) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(2) To install a rearward facing child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated OFF.

(3) Only a forward facing child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated ON.

(4) For a seat with height adjustment, set it to the highest and fully back longitudinal position.

(5) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the centre rear passenger seat.

(6) Depending on position, adjust the driver seat to the maximum height position or adjust the front passenger seat as far forward as necessary.

(7) Seats not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.

- (8) If necessary adjust the headrest to maximum height position.
- (9) Adjust the passenger seat with integrated headrest to its highest position.

Rules

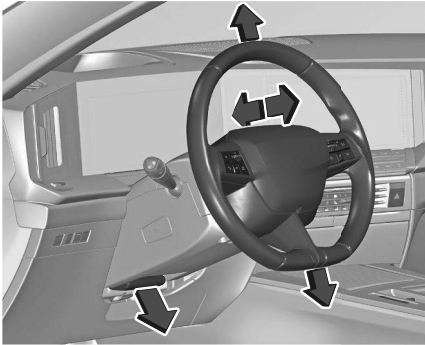
- A position that is i-Size compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and F2X, F2, B2.
- A position that is R3 compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and R2X.
- A position that is R2 compatible is also compatible for R1.
- A position that is F3 compatible is also compatible for F2X and F2.
- A position that is B3 compatible is also compatible for B2.

Size of child restraint fixture (1, 2, 3):

- R1 means rearward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 0 up to 10 kg and mass group 0+ up to 13 kg, age around zero to one year, size between 40 cm and 85 cm.
- R2 means reduced size of rearward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 0+ up to 13 kg and mass group 1 from 9 kg to 18 kg, age around two to four years, size between 40 cm and 100 cm.
- R3 means full size of rearward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 0+ up to 13 kg and mass group 1 from 9 kg to 18 kg, age around two to four years, size between 40 cm and 100 cm.
- F2, F2X mean reduced height of forward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 1 from 9 kg to 18 kg, age around one to four years, size between 75 cm and 100 cm.
- F3 means full height of forward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 1 from 9 kg to 18 kg, age around one to four years, size between 75 cm and 100 cm.
- B2 means forward facing booster child seat with reduced width for mass group 2 from 15 kg to 25 kg, age around 3.5 to seven years, size between 100 cm and 125 cm.
- B3 means forward facing booster child seat with full width for mass group 3 from 25 kg to 36 kg, age around seven to twelve years, size between 125 cm and 150 cm.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Adjustment



Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked. Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

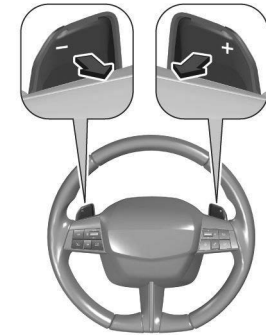
Steering Wheel Controls



Some driver assistance systems, the Infotainment system and a connected mobile phone can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.
 Infotainment System ⇨ page 98.
 Cruise control ⇨ page 148.
 Speed limiter ⇨ page 146.
 Adaptive cruise control ⇨ page 150.

Steering Wheel Shift Paddles (BEV version)

Three levels of regenerative braking can be selected using the steering wheel paddles:



- Pull the left paddle (-) to increase braking force
- Pull the right paddle (+) to decrease braking force

Use the maximum braking level when driving:

- Down steep hills
- In deep snow
- On muddy surfaces
- In stop-and-go traffic

The selected braking level is retained when the ignition is switched off.




The current level is indicated by one to three triangle segments on the cluster.

Steering Wheel Heating



In cold weather, this function heats the circular part of the control panel. It can be activated when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

☞ In the Climate touch screen application, select the Seats and Steering Wheel tab.

Press  to activate/deactivate the function.

The function is memorised each time the engine is switched off.

Horn

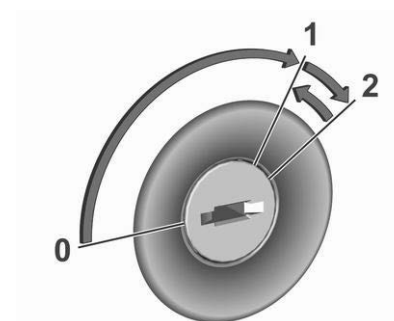


Pedestrian safety alert

The sound of the pedestrian safety alert is generated to indicate the vehicle presence to pedestrians. It is active up to 30 km/h.

Ignition Switch

Turn key:



- 0 ignition off: some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously
- 1 ignition on power mode: ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating, control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable
- 2 engine start: release key after engine has been started

Steering wheel lock

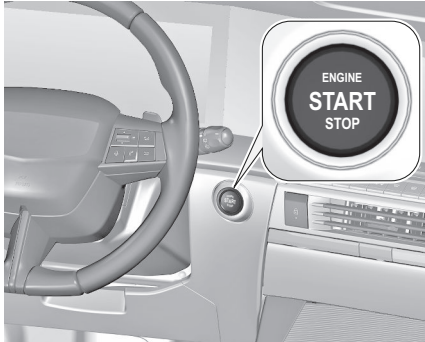
Depending on version, the vehicle may be equipped with a steering wheel lock. In this case, remove key from ignition switch and turn steering wheel until it engages.

Warning

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause, depending on version, steering wheel lock.

Power Button

See Starting and Stopping the Engine → page 108



Wipers and washers

Wipers And Washers Control Stalk

Note

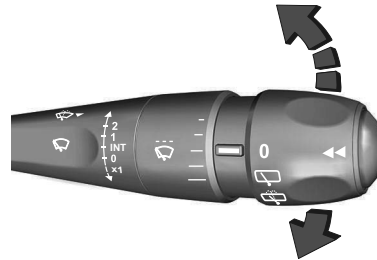
With the wiper lever in position AUTO or INT, 1 or 2 and the ignition switched

on after more than one minute: When the outside temperature is below +3°C, the windshield wiper activates only at a speed above 10 km/h. When the outside temperature is above +3°C, the windshield wiper activates immediately.

Note

In position 1 or 2, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced at a speed below 5 km/h and returns to the original frequency at a speed above 10 km/h.

Windshield wiper with adjustable wiper frequency



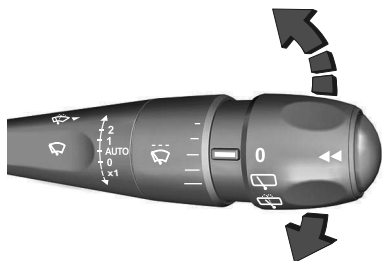
- 2 Fast
- 1 Normal
- INT Intermittent wiping
- 0 Off
- x1 Single wipe

Do not use if the windshield is frozen.
Switch off in car washes.
To activate interval wiping mode the next time the ignition is switched on, press the lever downwards to position **OFF** and back to **INT**.

Adjustable wiper frequency



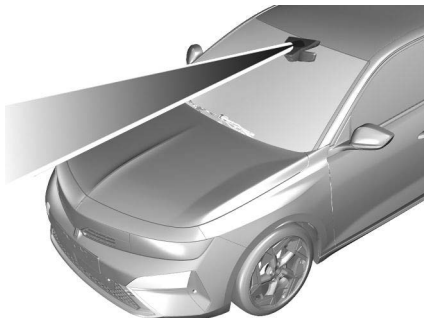
Wiper lever in position **INT**, it is possible to select five frequency levels by turning the ring.
When selecting a lower frequency, a confirmation wiping is given.

Windshield wiper with rain sensor

- 2** Fast
- 1** Normal
- AUTO** Automatic wiping
- 0** Off
- x1** Single wipe

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically regulates the frequency of the windshield wiper. If the ignition is switched off, automatic wiping mode is deactivated. To activate automatic wiping mode the next time the ignition is switched on, press the lever downwards to position **OFF** and back to **AUTO**.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.
Switch off in car washes.



Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity.

The longest dash indicates the highest sensitivity and the shortest dash indicates the lowest sensitivity. A wiping cycle confirms the selection.

Windshield washer



Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wiper wipes a few times.

Washer fluid ⇒ page 214.

Rear Window Wiper And Washer

Rear window wiper




- 0 off
-  intermittent wiping
-  screen wash

Do not use if the rear window is frozen or when a bicycle carrier is used.

Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windshield wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

The function can be activated or deactivated in the settings app in the Info Display ⇒ page 99.

To activate the rear wiper the next time the ignition is switched on, turn to position 0 and back to .

Rear window washer

Select .

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper wipes as long as

 is selected.

The rear view camera will be washed when the rear window washer is operating.

Washer fluid ⇒ page 214.

Panoramic view system ⇒ page 174.

Rear view camera ⇒ page 178.

Exterior Lights



Lighting Control

Warning

Do not look directly into the LED headlights. Risk of eye damage.



To activate the exterior lighting, rotate the outer knob on the left multifunction lever to one of the following positions:

- AUTO** Automatic light control switches automatically between daytime running light and headlight
-  Sidelights
-  Low beam / high beam headlights

High Beam



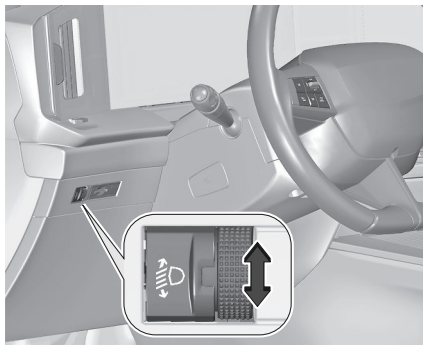
To activate or deactivate the high beam, pull the lever beyond the resistance point.

Headlight Flash



To activate the headlight flash, pull the lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

Headlight Height Adjustment



To manually adjust the headlight range according to the vehicle load and prevent dazzling, rotate the thumbwheel to the appropriate position.

For PHEV, Hybrid 48 V and ICE propulsion types:

- 0 Driver's seat occupied
- 2 All seats occupied
- 2 All seats occupied and load compartment loaded
- 4 Driver's seat occupied and load compartment loaded

For BEV propulsion type only:

- 0 Driver's seat occupied
- 1 All seats occupied

Headlights When Driving Abroad

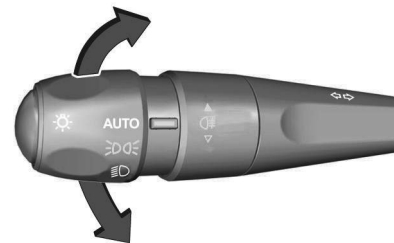
When driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, the headlights do not have to be adjusted.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

Automatic light control ⇨ page 47.

Turn Light



Up Right turn lights

Down Left turn lights

A resistance point can be felt when moving the indicator lever.

Constant flashing is activated when the indicator lever is being moved beyond the resistance point. It is deactivated when the steering wheel is moved in the opposite direction or indicator lever is manually moved back to its neutral position.

After 20 seconds the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 80 km/h.

Activate temporary flashing by holding the indicator lever just before the resistance point. Turn lights will flash until indicator lever is being released.

To activate three flashes, tap the indicator lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

Emergency Signals



Operated by pressing .

When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically, depending on the force of deceleration. They are switched off automatically, as soon as the vehicle is accelerated again.

Automatic Light Control



When the automatic light control function is switched on, the system switches between daytime running lights and low beam automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the wiper system.

Rear Foglamps



To switch on the Rear Foglights, rotate the inner knob on the left multifunction lever forward.

To switch them off, rotate the knob backward.

If the outer knob is in the AUTO position, turning on the Foglights will also activate the headlights.

The vehicle's rear Foglights is deactivated when towing a trailer or when a plug is connected to the socket, such as when using a bicycle carrier.

Automatic High Beam

The system switches from low beam to high beam and vice versa to prevent glaring. Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off depending on surrounding conditions. The latest setting of the high

beam assist will remain set after the ignition is switched on again.



Glare-free high beam for Matrix-LED headlights.

Activation

The high beam assist can be activated via the vehicle settings menu in the Info Display.

Info Display ⇒ page 94.

High beam is switched on automatically in dark surroundings at a speed above 45 km/h. High beam is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but high beam assist remains active.

The green control indicator  illuminates continuously when the high beam assist is activated, the blue  illuminates when high beam is on.

Control indicator **AUTO**, .

High beam assist switches automatically to low beam when:

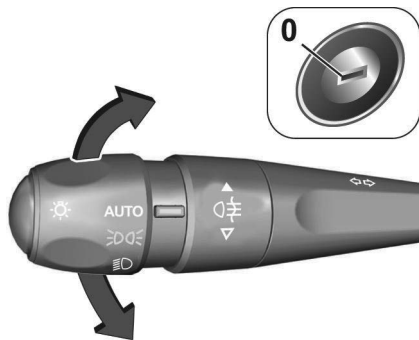
- Driving in urban areas.
- Camera detects heavy rain, snow or fog.
- Rear fog light is switched on.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles are detected by the camera.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated via the vehicle settings menu in the Info Display. Info Display ⇒ page 94.

Parking Lights



When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated:

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Move the lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

Confirmed by a signal and the corresponding turn lights control indicator.

Reverse Lights

The reverse lights comes on when reverse gear is selected.

Misted Light Covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself. To help, switch on the headlights.

Matrix-LED Headlights

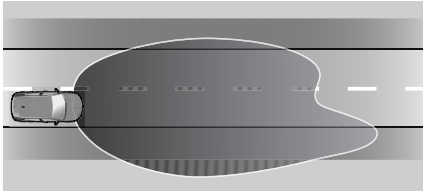
The Matrix-LED headlight system contains a variety of particular LEDs in each headlight which enables the control of the adaptive forward lighting functions. Light distribution and intensity of light are variably triggered depending on the lighting conditions, road type and driving situation. The vehicle adapts the headlights automatically to the situation to enable optimal light performance for the driver.

The adaptive forward lighting and the Matrix-LED headlights functions can be deactivated or activated in the Info Display and by switching off or on the automatic light control.

Info Display ⇒ page 94.

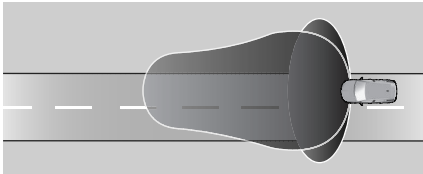
The glare-free high beam function of the Matrix-LED headlights are only available with light switch in position **AUTO**.

Country light



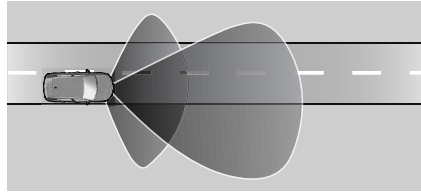
Activated automatically after a small delay when above 50 km/h when driving in rural areas. The illumination of the current lane and the side of the road is adapted. Oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

Pedestrian light



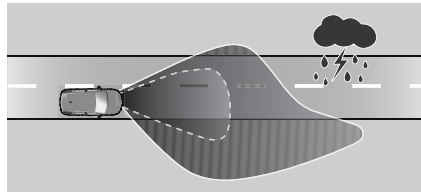
Activated automatically when the vehicle starts moving and up to a speed of 25 km/h. This light is designed to enhance visibility of pedestrians on the sides of the vehicle.

Town light



The light is wide to better recognize hazards along the road, e.g. pedestrians, crossings.

Adverse weather light



Activated automatically when the following conditions are met:

- the vehicle speed is between 0 km/h and 70 km/h,
- the rear fog light is off,

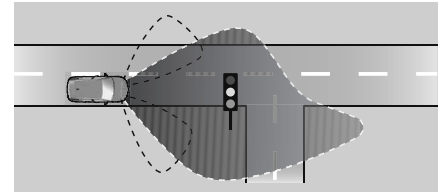
- the windscreen wipers are activated for more than two minutes.

The light is widened to better recognise the lane markings and the low beam is dimmed to avoid dazzling the oncoming traffic

Fog mode

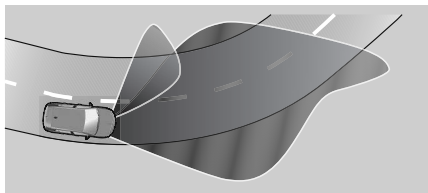
Activated automatically when the rear fog light is switched on. This mode is designed to enhance driver visibility in foggy conditions.

Cornering light



Activated at a speed of up to approx. 40 km/h when turning off. Depending on the steering wheel angle and the turn lights, a particular LED light function is triggered which illuminates the direction of travel.

Curve light



Particular LEDs, based on steering angle and speed, are additionally triggered to improve lighting in curves. This function is activated at speeds from 40 km/h to 70 km/h.

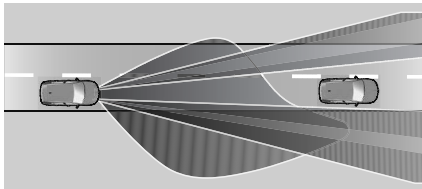
Glare-free high beam

⚠ Warning

The glare-free high beam function may dazzle other road users when the vehicle is driven in countries where traffic moves on the opposite side of the road. E.g. when the vehicle was designed for left hand drive traffic and it is driven in a country with right hand drive traffic.

Switch off glare-free high beam function whenever you are driving in countries mentioned above!

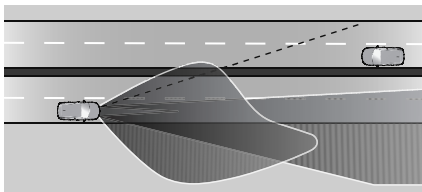
The system enables a glare-free high beam when driving in dark surroundings.



The beam is dynamically shaped depending on driving conditions. This gives the best light distribution without dazzling other road users.

Glare-free high beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 45 km/h. It is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but the system remains active.

Motorway mode



Activated automatically at a speed above 105 km/h. Illumination is adapted to the higher speed driven on motorways. If there is oncoming traffic,

following vehicles ahead or passing, the illumination on the side of the vehicle is reduced.

Fault in LED headlight system

When the system detects a failure in the LED headlight system, it selects a preset position to avoid dazzling of oncoming traffic. A warning is displayed on the cluster.

After reconnecting the vehicle battery, the system needs a recalibration by driving a short distance.


Interior Lights

The brightness of the following lights can be adjusted in the settings app in the Info Display when the exterior lights are on:

- Instrument panel illumination
- Info Display
- Illuminated switches and operation elements

Courtesy Lights

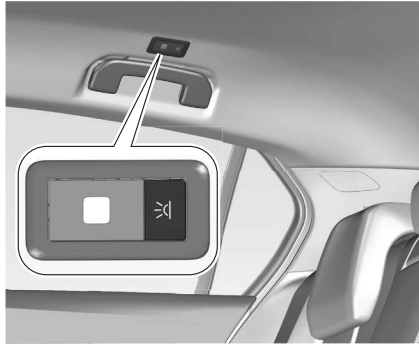



Operated by pressing .

Note

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

Reading Lights



Operated by pressing the button .
Depending on version, the location of the reading lights is different.

Sunvisor Lights

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

Interior Ambient Lights

Centre console lighting


A spotlight integrated in the overhead console illuminates the centre console when headlights are switched on.

Welcome Lighting

Some or all of the following lights are switched on for a short time by unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control:

- headlights
- interior lights
- turn lights
- number plate lights

The number of activated lights depends on the surrounding light conditions. The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is switched on. Starting off .

The function can be activated or deactivated in the settings app  in the Info Display.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- illumination of some switches
- cluster

Exit lighting


The following lights are switched on when the ignition is switched off:

- headlights
- interior lights

- centre console lighting

They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark.


The function can be activated or

deactivated in the settings app  in the Info Display.

Vehicle locator lighting

This function allows to locate the vehicle, e.g., in weak lighting conditions using the remote control.

The headlights come on and the turn lights flash for ten seconds.

Press  two times on the remote control.

Battery discharge protection

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.

Sunroof

Warning

Take care when operating the sunroof. Risk of injury, particularly to children. Keep a close watch on the movable parts when operating them. Ensure that

nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Caution


Do not operate the sunroof if a roof rack is fitted.


Do not place heavy loads on the movable parts of the sunroof.

Switch on ignition to operate the sunroof.



Open Or Close

Press and hold  sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.

Press  firmly then release: the sunroof is opened or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

Sunblind

The sunblind is manually operated.

Close or open the sunblind by sliding it using the handle.

When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

General Hints

Safety function

If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties, e.g.


due to frost, press and hold .

The sunroof closes with safety function disabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

Closing sunroof from outside



The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold  for more than two seconds to close the sunroof. Release the button to stop the movement.

Initialising The Sunroof

If the automatic operation of the sunroof is not possible, the sunroof has to be initialised:

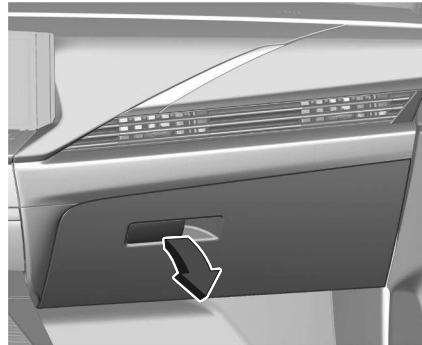
1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press and hold  to close the sunroof.
When it is completely closed, a short opening and closing motion takes place.
3. Only release  one second after this motion has finished.

Interior Storage and Features

Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments

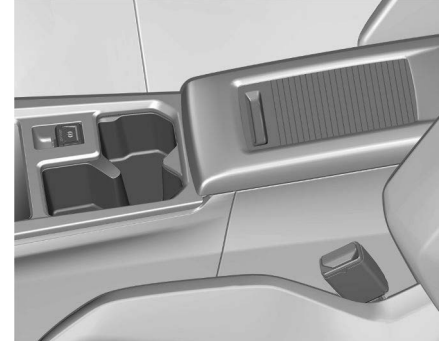
Glove Compartment



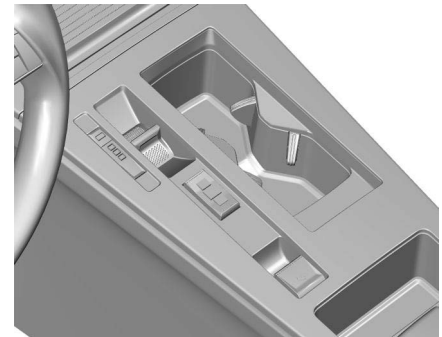
Pull the lever to open the glovebox. The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

Cupholders

Depending on version, cupholders are located in the centre console:



- as an open storage compartment before the front armrest



- as an open storage compartment



A combined storage for cupholders and mobile device is located in the rear armrest. Fold down the armrest.

Center Console Compartment



A storage compartment is located at the instrument panel.

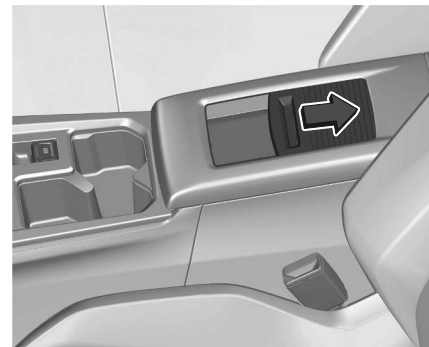


A storage compartment for inductive charging is located beneath the instrument panel.
Inductive charging ⇒ page 56
Depending on version, the storage compartment may have a sliding cover. Slide the cover forwards.

Additional storage compartments

Depending on version, additional storage compartments are available on the rear of the center console.

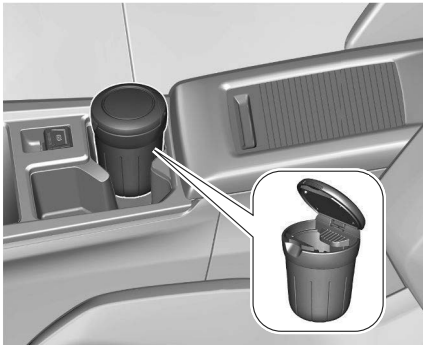
A storage compartment for inductive charging and USB sockets is located beneath the instrument panel. On the inner side of the right lid, there is a clip for storing plastic cards and a pen holder.



Depending on version, the storage compartment may have a sliding cover and a cable pass through that grants access to storage in the second row centre console. Slide the cover forwards.

Ashtrays

Caution
To be used only for ash and not for combustible rubbish.



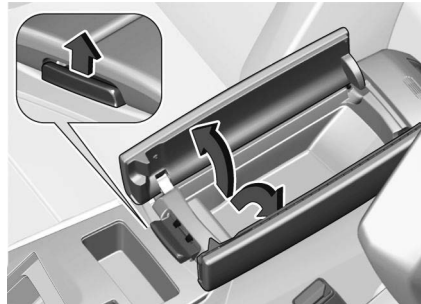
A portable ashtray can be placed in the cupholders.

Coin holder



Depending on version, a coin holder may be located on the left side of the instrument panel.

Armrest Compartment



Depending on version, additional storage compartments are available on the rear of the center console.

A storage compartment for inductive charging and USB sockets is located beneath the instrument panel. On the inner side of the right lid, there is a clip for storing plastic cards and a pen holder. Depending on version, the storage compartment may have a sliding cover and a cable pass through that grants access to storage in the second row centre console.

Slide the cover forwards.

Inductive charging ⇒ page 56

USB socket ⇒ page 56

Door Storage



A storage compartment is located in the front and rear door panels.

12V Power Outlets



A 12 V power outlet is located in the centre console.

Depending on version, another 12 V power outlet is located in the load compartment.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.

The 12 V power outlet is deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage. Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable plugs.

USB Ports



These symbols determine the type of use of a USB socket:



Power supply and recharging.



To connect a portable device to the Infotainment system, use this port



Likewise, plus use of smartphone applications with the touch screen.

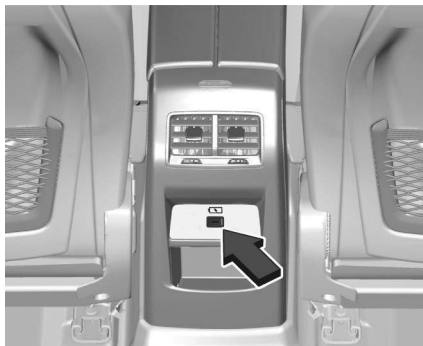
Depending on version, the vehicle is fitted with two USB sockets in the storage compartment beneath the instrument panel.

Two USB sockets on the 2nd row.

Note

The sockets must always be kept clean and dry.

Rear USB port



The USB port can be used to charge a portable device.

Wireless Phone Charger

Warning

When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

Warning

Leaving the sliding lid open will improve smartphone functionality.

Warning

Inductive charging can affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or other medical devices. If applicable, seek medical advice before using the inductive charging device.

Warning

Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile device, as these objects could become very hot.

To charge a mobile device:



1. Remove all objects from the charging device
2. Place the mobile device on the charging area. Note that the mobile device must be placed between the positioning aids

Qi compatible mobile devices can be charged inductively.

On some mobile devices, a back cover with an integrated coil or a jacket may be required to use inductive charging.

Protective cover for the mobile device could have impact on the inductive charging.

In the event that the mobile device is not charging properly, rotate it 180° and place it on the charging device again.

Status LED



The LED indicates the current charging status.

illuminates green

The mobile device is charging.

Flashes yellow

The mobile device has not been centred properly in the charging zone or an unknown object has been detected in the charging zone.

illuminates yellow

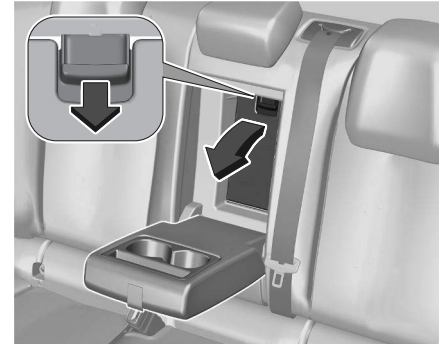
There is a problem with the mobile device's battery or a fault of the inductive charger has been detected.

If the problem persists, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Rear Seats Pass-Through



Fold down the rear armrest.



Pull the handle and open the cover. Suitable for loading long, narrow objects.

Load Compartment

Depending on version, the rear seat backrest is divided into two or three

parts. All parts can be folded down individually to increase the size of the load compartment.

Before folding the rear seat backrests, execute the following if necessary:

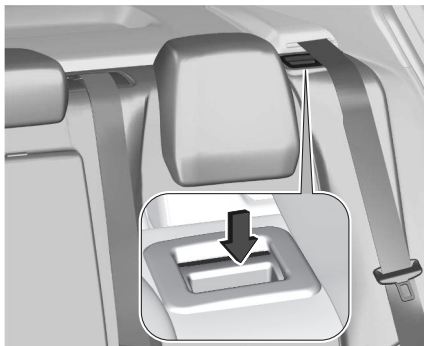
- Move the front seats forwards if necessary.
- Remove the load compartment cover ⇒ page 57.
- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down ⇒ page 19.

Folding down / up the rear backrests from the passenger compartment

- Check that the seat belts are not engaged in the seat belt buckles, so that the backrests can be moved.



- Pull the release lever and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly. Make sure that the belts are positioned correctly and stay clear of the folding area.

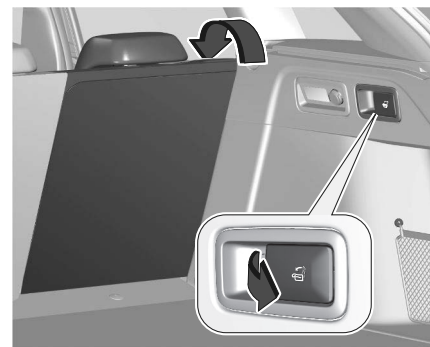


The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks near the release levers are no longer visible.

Warning

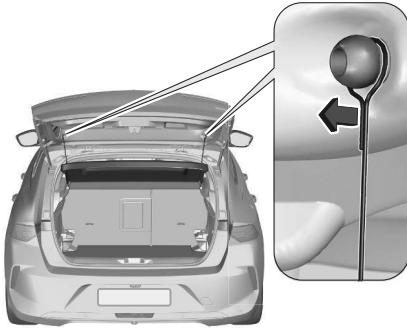
When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

Folding down the rear backrests from the load compartment (Sports Tourer)



To fold down the left or right rear backrests from the load compartment, pull the release lever in the corresponding load compartment side panel.

The centre backrest will be folded down along with the left backrest.

5-door Hatchback**Removing the cover**

Unhook the retaining straps from the tailgate.



Lift the cover at the front and push it upwards at the rear.
Remove the cover.

Fitting the cover

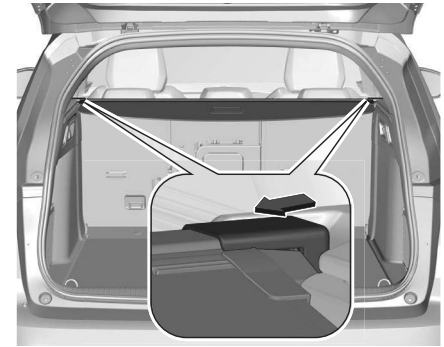
Engage the cover in the side guides and fold downwards. Attach the retaining straps to the tailgate.

Sports Tourer**Closing roller blind**

Pull the roller blind using the handle towards the rear and upwards until it engages in the sideward retainers.

Opening roller blind

Pull the roller blind handle to the rear and downwards. It rolls up automatically.

Removing roller blind**Open the roller blind.**

Press the lever on the right side and lift the roller blind first at the right side and then on the left side. Remove the roller blind from the recesses.



The removed roller blind can be stored under the rear floor cover as shown in the illustration.



Depending on version, the roller blind needs to be stored upside down and crosswise from the left to the right load compartment side.

Lift the rear floor cover and remove the covers at both load compartment sides to get access to the recesses.

Place the roller blind so that it fits into the recesses at both sides and reattach the covers.

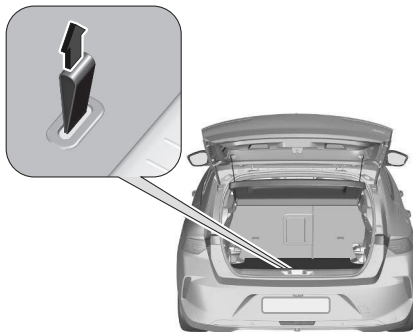
Rear floor storage cover ⇒ page 60.

Installing roller blind

Insert the left side of the roller blind in the recess, then press the lever and insert the right side of the roller blind in the recess.

Rear Floor Storage Cover

Raise the cover at the recess to gain access to emergency breakdown equipment.



Depending on version, it includes:

- A hazard warning triangle
- A temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit
- A spare wheel with the tool kit
- The traction battery charging cables (Electric)

Note

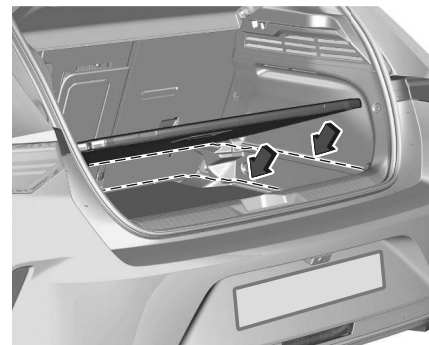
A rubber strap is located on the left side of the trunk to help secure items during transport.

Tire repair kit ⇒ page 197

Spare wheel ⇒ page 194

Double load floor

The double load floor can be inserted in the load compartment in two positions:



- lower position above the rear floor storage cover
- upper position interlocked into the back panel trim

To remove, use the opening to raise the rear floor cover and lift it up.

If mounted in the upper position, the space between the load floor and the spare wheel well cover can be used as a stowage compartment.

In this position and with rear backrests folded, an almost completely flat load bay is created.

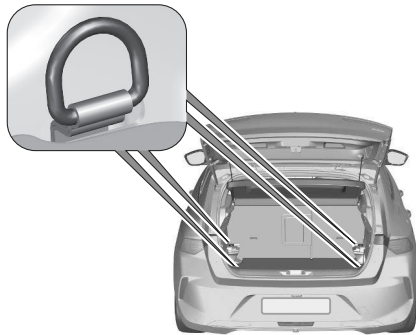
5-door Hatchback

The load of the double load floor in the upper position is limited to a maximum of 100 kg.

Sports Tourer

The load of the double load floor in the upper position is limited to a maximum of 150 kg.

Lashing eyes



The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.

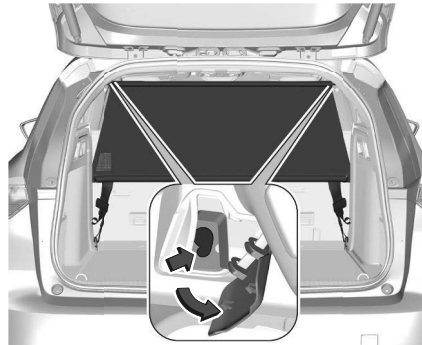
Safety net

The safety net can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear seat backrests are folded, behind the front seats.

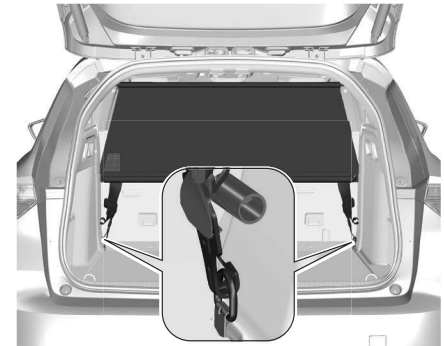
Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

Installation behind the rear seats

- Remove the roller blind.



- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the rear seats: suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.



- Attach the hooks of the safety net straps in the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
- Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Rear seat backrests must be raised up.

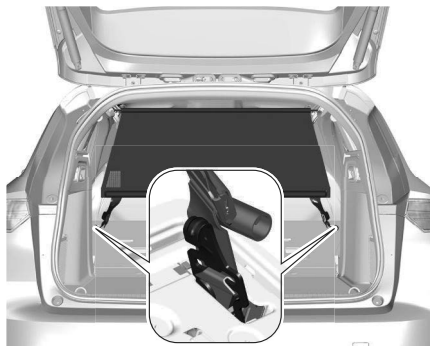
Installation behind the front seats

- Push down head restraints and fold down the rear backrests.

Load compartment ⇒ page 57



- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the front seats: suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.



- Insert the hooks of the safety net straps into the buckles on the back side of the rear backrests.
- Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.

Warning Triangle

5-door Hatchback

Store the warning triangle in the space on the right side under the rear floor storage cover.



Sports Tourer

Store the warning triangle in the space on the right side under the rear floor storage cover.

First aid kit

Depending on version, the first aid kit can be stored in a free space under the rear floor storage cover.

Loading information

⚠ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.



- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Make sure that the backrests are securely engaged. If

objects can be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.

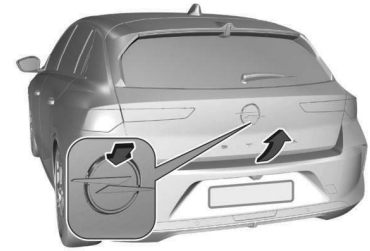
- Prevent sliding of loose objects by securing them with straps attached to the lashing eyes ⇒ page 61.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.
- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (see identification plate ⇒ page 229) and the kerb weight.
To calculate the payload, enter the data for your vehicle in the weights table at the front of this manual.
The kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (fuel tank 90% full).


Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity.
Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tire pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.
Do not drive faster than 120 km/h.
The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.
The permissible roof load is 75 kg.
Sports Tourer with roof rails: The permissible roof load is 85 kg.

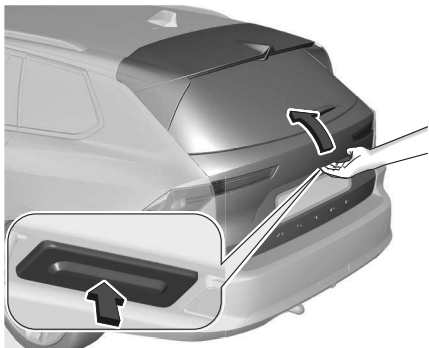
Tailgate Operation

Opening 5-Door Hatchback



1. Press the emblem or press and hold  on the radio remote control.
2. Open the tailgate.

Sports Tourer



After unlocking, push the tailgate button under the tailgate moulding and open the tailgate manually.

Central locking system ⇒ page 9.

Closing



Use the interior handle.

Central locking system ⇒ page 9..

Power Tailgate





⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power tailgate. Risk of injury, particularly to children. Keep a close watch on the movable tailgate when operating. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped during operating and no one is standing within the moving area.

Note

The power tailgate will be deactivated if a trailer is connected to the socket of the trailer hitch.

The power tailgate can be operated by:

- Pressing  on the electronic key. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate,  must be pressed longer than during locking or unlocking
- Hands-free operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper.
- The tailgate button under the exterior tailgate moulding and  in the open tailgate.
- Pressing  twice next to the steering wheel.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the tailgate can only be operated when the vehicle is stationary and **P** engaged. The power tailgate can be adjusted in the Info Display.

Vehicle customization ⇒ page 99.

Note

Operating the power tailgate does not operate the central locking system. To open the tailgate with the button on the electronic key, or with the tailgate button or via hands-free operation, it is not necessary to unlock the vehicle. A precondition is that the electronic key is outside the vehicle, within a range of approx.

1 m of the tailgate.



Do not leave the electronic key in the load compartment.

Lock the vehicle after closing if it was unlocked previously.

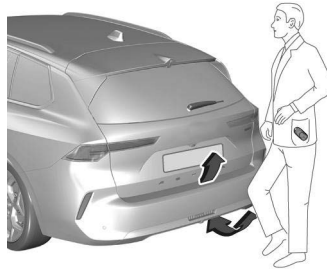
Central locking system ⇒ page 9

Operation With The Electronic Key



Press and hold  to open or close the tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate,  must be pressed longer than during locking or unlocking.

Hands-Free Operation With Motion Sensor Below The Rear Bumper



To open or close the tailgate, move the foot below the rear bumper back and forth in the area shown in the illustration. Do not hold the foot longer or move too slow below the bumper.

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx.

1 m of the tailgate.

The turn lights will flash to indicate the power tailgate movement.

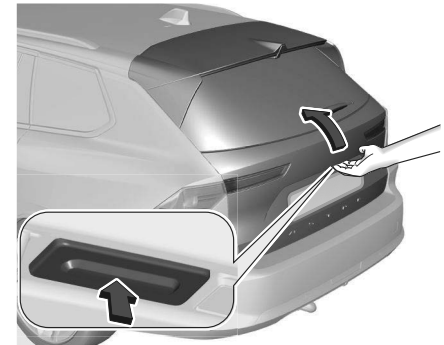
The hands-free operation can be adjusted in the Info Display.

Vehicle customization → page 99.

Danger

Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during handsfree operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.


Operation With The Tailgate Button Under The Exterior Tailgate Moulding



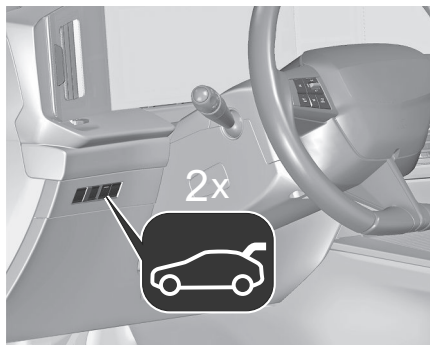
To open the tailgate, press the tailgate button under the tailgate moulding until the tailgate starts to move. If the vehicle is locked, the electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx.


1 m of the tailgate.



To close, press  in the open tailgate until the tailgate starts to move.




Operation With The Button Next To The Steering Wheel



Press  twice to open the tailgate.

Stop or change direction of movement


To stop movement of the tailgate immediately:

- press  once on the electronic key, or
- press the tailgate button under the exterior tailgate moulding, or
- press  on the open tailgate, or
- press  next to the steering wheel.

Pressing one of the switches again will reverse the direction of movement.

Memorising an opening height

To memorise a desired opening height, move the tailgate to the desired position and press one of the following buttons for more than three seconds:

-  in the open tailgate
- the button under the tailgate moulding

The adjusted memorisation will be confirmed by a chime. A new memorisation cancels the previous one.

Note

Adjusting opening height should be programmed at ground level.

Safety function


If the power tailgate encounters an obstacle during opening or closing, the direction of movement will automatically be reversed slightly.

Multiple obstacles in one power cycle will deactivate the function. In this case, close or open the tailgate manually to reactivate the power tailgate.

The power tailgate has pinch sensors on the side edges. If the sensors detect obstacles between tailgate and chassis, the tailgate will open, until it is activated again or closed manually.

The safety function is indicated by a warning chime.

Remove all obstacles before resuming normal power operation.

If the vehicle is equipped with factoryfitted towing equipment and a trailer is electrically connected, the power tailgate can only be opened with the tailgate button or closed with  in the open tailgate. Ensure that there are no obstacles in the moving area.

Overload

If the power tailgate is repeatedly operated at short intervals, the function is disabled for some time.

Move tailgate manually into end position to reset the system.

General Hints For Operating Tailgate

Danger

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

Caution

Do not install any carrier onto the tailgate.

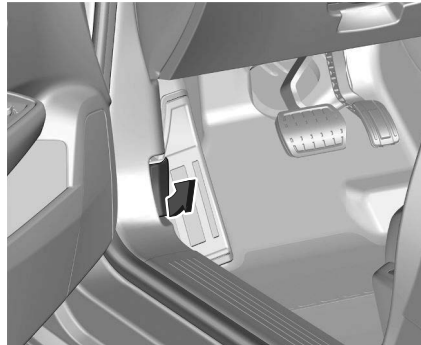
Note

At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this case lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

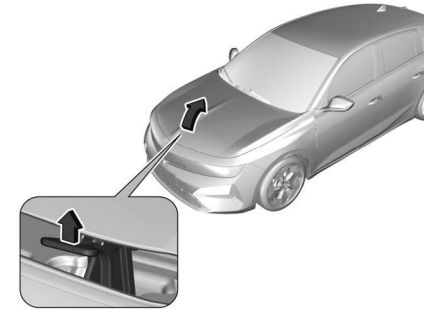
Hood

Opening

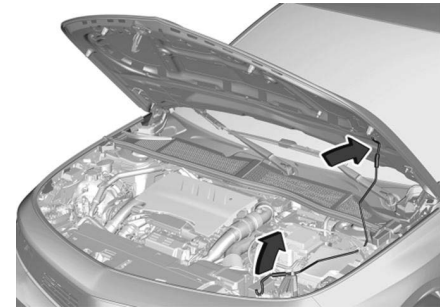
- Open the left-hand front door.



- Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you to unlock the hood.
- Release the leave fully.
- Pull the interior release lever towards you second time to unlock the safety catch.



- Raise the hood.



- Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

- Unclip the stay from the support slot of the bonnet and place it back in its housing.
- Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- Check the locking.

 **Warning**

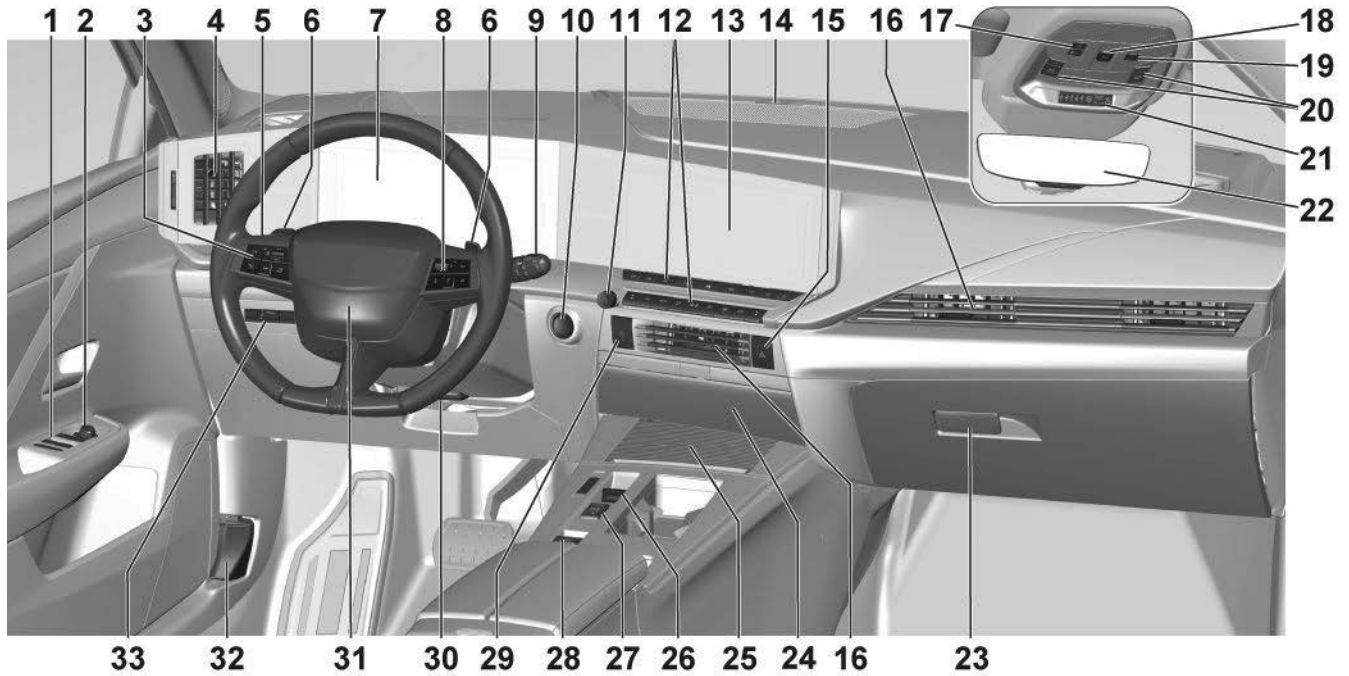
Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Dashboard Instruments And Control

Instrument Panel Overview	71	Hybrid system fault	81	Engine Check-Malfunction	
Instrument Cluster	72	Parking brake	81	Indicator (MIL) Warning Light	85
e-SAVE function (PHEV)	73	Electric parking brake fault	81	Tire Pressure Monitoring	
Odometer	74	Brake Warning Light.....	81	System (TPMS) Warning Light.....	85
Speedometer	74	Antilock Brake System (ABS)	81	Engine oil pressure	85
Tachometer	74	Door Open Warning Light	81	Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)	
High Voltage Battery Charge		Electric Power Steering (EPS)		Warning Light.....	85
Status.....	75	Fault Warning Light.....	81	Driver alert	86
Trip Computer	75	Lane Keeping Assist.....	82	Driver Attention Warning by	
Media - Radio - Phone		Service Warning Light.....	82	Camera (Drowsiness alert).....	86
information	75	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)		Door open	86
Driver assistance systems	75	Warning Light	82	Exterior Lights.....	86
Vehicle settings.....	75	Gear shifting	82	Automatic Low Beam Indicator	
Engine Oil Level Monitor	76	Parking Brake	82	Light	86
Service display	76	Electric Parking Warning Light	82	Ready To Drive Indicator Light.....	86
Warning Lights, Indicators, and		Electronic Stability Control		High Voltage Battery	
Messages.....	77	(ESC) Active Warning Light	83	Temperature High	86
Control Indicators	77	Engine coolant temperature	83	Apply footbrake	86
Overview.....	77	Exhaust Filter	83	Autostop	86
Turn lights	79	Tire Deflation Detection System	83	Automatic High Beam Indicator	
Seat belt reminder.....	79	Preheating	83	Light.....	86
Airbag And Belt Tensioners	80	AdBlue	83	High Beam Indicator Light.....	86
Airbag deactivation	80	Lane Keep Assist (LKA)		Pedestrian Safety Alert Fault	87
Charging System	80	Warning Light	84	Rear Fog Light	87
Fault Indicator Light.....	80	Advanced lane keep assist	84	Rain Sensor.....	87
Service Vehicle Soon	80	Parking assist	84	Active Emergency Braking	87
Stop Engine	81	Electronic Stability Control And		Traffic Sign Assistant	87
System Check.....	81	Anti-Slip Regulator.....	84	Driver Drowsiness Detection.....	87
		Low Fuel Warning Light	84	E-SAVE Function	87
		Vehicle Ready	84	Vehicle Messages	87
		Reduced Engine Power	84	Warning Chimes	88
		Charging cable connected	84	Climate Controls.....	88

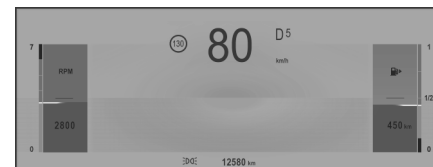
Electronic climate control system	88
Air Quality.....	91
Air Heater	91
Temperature Preconditioning	92
Air vents	93
Fixed air vents	93
Maintenance.....	94
Air conditioning regular operation	94
Service	94
Displays.....	94
Info Display	94
Head Up Display	95
Energy application (PHEV or BEV).....	96
e-SAVE (PHEV).....	97

Instrument Panel Overview



1. Power windows ⇒ page 14
2. Exterior mirrors, head-up display ⇒ page 17
3. Cruise control, speed limiter, adaptive cruise control ⇒ page 148
4. Side air vents ⇒ page 93
5. Left multifunction lever, including high beam, headlight flash, turn lights, fog lights, parking lights. ⇒ page 45
6. Steering wheel paddles ⇒ page 41
7. Instrument panel cluster ⇒ page 72
8. Steering Wheel Controls ⇒ page 103
9. Right multifunction lever, including, windshield wiper and washer, rear window wiper and washer. ⇒ page 43
10. Power button ⇒ page 109
11. Infotainment on / off and volume ⇒ page 98
12. Heated rear window, heated windshield, heated seats, ventilated seats, heated steering wheel, vehicle personalisation, electronic climate control system ⇒ page 24
13. Info Display ⇒ page 94
14. Anti-theft alarm system status LED ⇒ page 12
15. Hazard warning flashers ⇒ page 47
16. Centre air vents s ⇒ page 93
17. Emergency call ⇒ page 191
18. Sunroof ⇒ page 52
19. Anti-theft alarm system ⇒ page 12
20. Interior lights ⇒ page 50
21. Seat belt reminder, airbag deactivation ⇒ page 28
22. Interior mirror ⇒ page 18
23. Airbag deactivation, glovebox ⇒ page 32
24. Front storage ⇒ page 54
25. Front storage, power outlets, inductive charging ⇒ page 54
26. Gear selection, selector lever ⇒ page 115
27. Drive modes ⇒ page 120
28. Parking brake ⇒ page 113
29. Central locking button ⇒ page 9
30. Steering wheel adjustment ⇒ page 41
31. Horn ⇒ page 42
32. Bonnet release lever ⇒ page 67
33. Power tailgate ⇒ page 64, Coin holder ⇒ page 55, Headlight range adjustment ⇒ page 46, Temperature preconditioning ⇒ page 92, Fuel filler flap ⇒ page 126

Instrument Cluster



In addition to warning lights, gauges and indicators, the following information is available:

- trip odometer
- gear shift indication

- service information
- vehicle and warning messages
- driver assistance messages
- pop-up messages
- infotainment information

Pages



Press the button to scroll through the pages or to close a pop-up message.

Personalisation

The Instrument Panel Cluster can be personalised via the menu in the Info Display.



Several pages can be created by choosing widgets to be displayed. It is





possible to memorise up to five pages with one or two widgets each.


E-SAVE Function (PHEV)

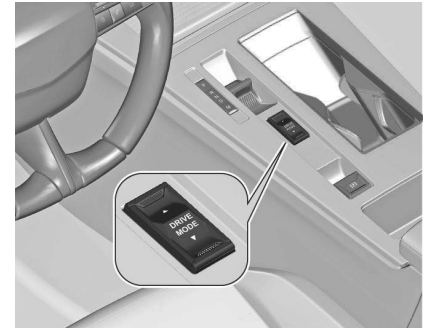
This function allows to provide electrical energy of the high voltage battery for a later use, e.g. for driving in areas restricted to electrical vehicles. It is possible to reserve the complete electrical energy of the battery or a part of it.

Note

If the energy requested exceeds the energy of the high voltage battery, the combustion engine charges the battery. This results in a loss of performance and a higher fuel consumption. The function can be activated in the Info Display.

1. Press .
2. If necessary, touch  and swipe the screen downwards and touch .
3. Touch .
4. Select e-SAVE.
5. Select the distance for which electrical is to be reserved or reserve the whole capacity of the high voltage battery.

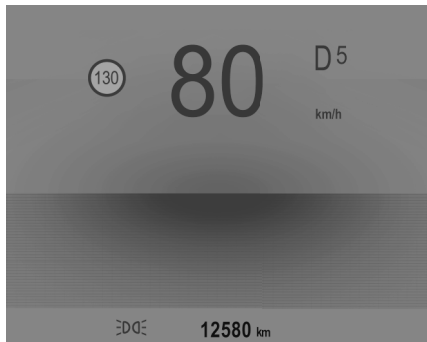
6. Press ON.  illuminates on the cluster when the function is activated.



7. To use the reserved electrical energy change to electric mode.

The setting of this function is not stored when the ignition is switched off.

Odometer



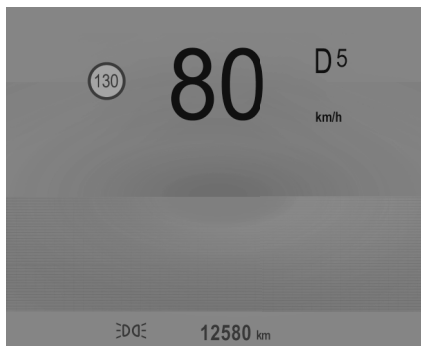
The total recorded distance is displayed in km.

Fuel gauge



Never run the fuel tank dry. The top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity, due to the remaining fuel in the tank.

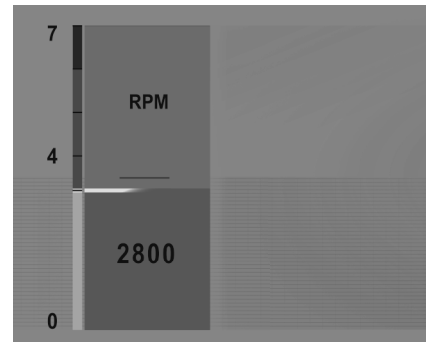
Speedometer



Indicates vehicle speed. Hybrid 48 V vehicle: If the vehicle is driven in electric mode, the speed is indicated in blue.

Propulsion types ⇒ page 3.

Tachometer

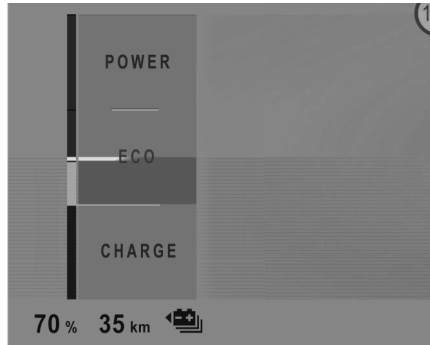


Displays the engine speed. Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible. A red marker indicates the beginning of the warning zone of excessive revolutions. For Diesel engines, the warning zone starts at 5000 revolutions per minute. For petrol engines, the warning zone starts at 6500 revolutions per minute.

Caution

If the indicator is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. The engine can be damaged.

High Voltage Battery Charge Status



Displays the high voltage battery state of charge.

Trip Computer

i
ii



Pressing the button displays the following tabs in turn:

- current information
 - total range
 - current consumption
 - time counter for the stop-start mode
 - percentage of the current journey travelled in allelectric driving mode (PHEV, Hybrid 48 V)
 - total distance recorder
- trip 1
 - average speed
 - average fuel consumption
 - distance travelled
- trip 2
 - average speed
 - average fuel consumption
 - distance travelled

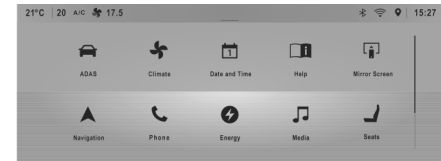
The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

To reset a trip, press the button for more than two seconds when the desired trip is displayed.

Media - Radio - Phone information

The vehicle's behaviour can be personalised by changing the settings in the Info Display.

Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.





Driver Assistance Systems

To display the settings of the advanced driver assistance systems, press . A shortcut for each driver assistance system can be created by touching . All driver assistance systems with a shortcut will be displayed in the shortcut tab for fast activation or deactivation.

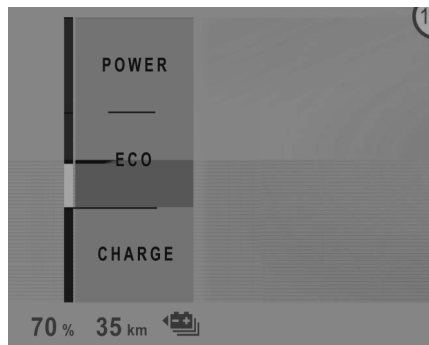
Vehicle Settings

The vehicle settings can be displayed via the home screen:

- Press to display the home screen.

- If necessary, touch  and swipe the screen downwards and touch .
- Touch the vehicle settings menu on the left side.

Power Flow



The power indicator gauge informs about the current energy situation of the vehicle.

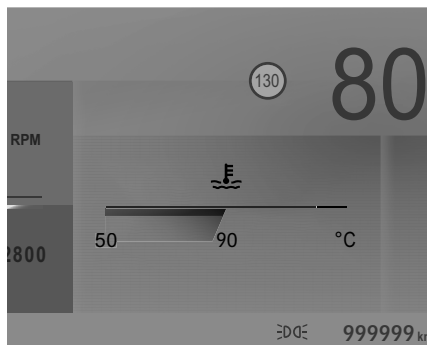
Power : Energy consumption during high power demand. Hybrid 48 V vehicles: ICE and electrical engine work combined.

Eco : An optimum in energy is accessible in all driving modes.

Hybrid 48 V vehicles: optimum usage of ICE or electrical engine.

Charge : Battery is being charged with energy resulting from braking or deceleration of the vehicle


Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



Displays the coolant temperature.

grey marking / 90 : normal operating temperature

red marking : temperature too high


Control indicator  illuminates red if coolant temperature is too high.

Caution

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

Engine Oil Level Monitor

The state of the engine oil level is displayed on the cluster for a few seconds following the service information after switching on the ignition. A proper state of engine oil level is indicated by a message.

If engine oil level is low,  flashes and a message is indicated, accompanied by

the  indicator.

Confirm engine oil level by using the dipstick and top up engine oil respectively.

Engine oil.

A fault of measurement is indicated by a message. Check engine oil level manually by using the dipstick.

Service Display

The service system informs when to change the engine oil and filter or a


vehicle service is required. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change are required can vary considerably.


Service information ⇒ page 208.


A required service due is displayed on the cluster for several seconds after switching on the ignition.

If no service is required for the next 3000 km or more, no service information appears in the display.

If service is required within the next 3000 km, the remaining distance to the next service due, the distance travelled since the last service due or the time period that remains to the next service due is indicated for several seconds.

Simultaneously symbol  illuminates temporarily as reminder.

If service is required in less than 1000 km, the remaining distance to the next service due, the distance travelled since the last service due or the time period that remains to the next service due is indicated for several seconds. Simultaneously  illuminates permanently as reminder.

Overdue service is indicated by a message on the cluster which indicates the overdue distance.  flashes and then illuminates permanently until service is executed.

Reset of service interval

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to ensure proper functionality. It is recommended to seek the assistance of a workshop. If service is executed by yourself, operate as following:

- switch off ignition



- press and hold the button
- switch on ignition, the distance indication begins a countdown
- when the display indicates =0, release the button again

The symbol  disappears.

Retrieving service information

The status of the service information can be retrieved at any time via the Info Display. Press Check in the vehicle settings menu. The service information is displayed for a few seconds.

Info Display ⇒ page 94.

Service information ⇒ page 208.

Warning Lights, Indicators, and Messages

Control Indicators

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. Depending on the equipment, the position of the control indicators may vary. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test. The control indicator colours mean:

red : danger, important reminder

yellow : warning, information, fault

green : confirmation of activation

blue : confirmation of activation

white : confirmation of activation










grey : system paused, at least one system limitation has been detected













Control indicators are located in the Driver Information Centre. Driver Information Centre ⇒ page 72.













Overview














The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes.

1	: only for information.
2	: information and warning
3	: seek the assistance of a workshop
4	: stop engine, leave vehicle and seek the assistance of a workshop
5	: have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop

	1	Turn lights
	2	Seat belt reminder
	5	Airbag and belt tensioners
	2	Airbag activated
	2	Airbag deactivated
	4	Charging system
	5	Malfunction indicator light
	5	Service vehicle soon
	4	Stop engine

	5	Hybrid system fault
	4	Brake and clutch system
	1 / 5	Parking brake
	5	Electric parking brake fault
	1	Parking assist
	2	Automatic operation of electric parking brake off
	2	Antilock brake system (ABS)
	4	Power steering
	2	Lane keep assist
	2	Advanced lane keep assist
	2	Parking assist off
	2 / 5	Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system

	2	Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system
	4	Engine coolant temperature high
	1	Preheating
	1	AdBlue
	2 / 3	Deflation detection system
	4	Engine oil pressure
	2	Low fuel
	2	Charging cable connected
	1	Vehicle ready
	2	Reduced engine power
	4	High voltage battery temperature high
	1	Apply footbrake

	1	Autostop
	1 / 3	Stop-start system deactivated
	1	Exterior light
	1	Low beam
	1	High beam
	1	High beam assist
	1	Rear fog light
	3	Pedestrian safety alert fault
	2 / 3	Active emergency braking
	2 / 3	Traffic sign assistant
	2 / 3	Driver alert and driver attention warning by camera
	2	Door open
	1	e-SAVE is activated

Turn Lights


↔ flashes green.

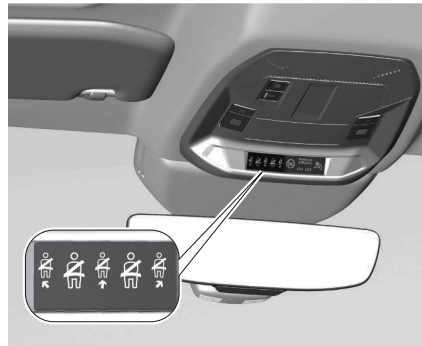
Flashes if a turn light is activated.


An audible warning can be heard when the turn lights are on.

Turn lights → page 46.






Seat Belt Reminder



 illuminates or flashes on the cluster together with the indication in the overhead console for each seat belt.



 illuminates in different colours depending on condition:

- red** : seat belt not fastened
- green** : seat belt fastened
- grey** : seat not occupied

- When the ignition is switched on,  a illuminates in the overhead console in the corresponding colour.
- After driving off,  on the cluster and the symbol for the respective seat in the overhead console flash in red for a certain time together with a chime if the respective seat is occupied but the seat belt is not fastened. After a certain time of driving,  illuminates constantly in red until the seat belt of the respective seat has been fastened.
- If any passenger has unfastened the seat belt during driving,  on the cluster and the symbol for the respective seat in the overhead console flash in red for a certain time together with a chime. After a certain time of driving,  illuminates constantly in red until the seat belt of the respective seat has been fastened again.

Depending on version,  could illuminate in red when the respective seat is not occupied or  could extinguish after a certain time independent on condition.

Seat belts ⇒ page 26.

Airbag And Belt Tensioners

 and  illuminate yellow.

When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for some seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not extinguish after some seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

The airbags and belt pretensioners may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners or airbags is indicated by continuous

illumination of .

Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Belt pretensioners ⇒ page 28.

Airbag system ⇒ page 28.

Airbag Deactivation



 illuminates yellow.

The front passenger airbag is activated.

 2 illuminates yellow.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Airbag deactivation ⇒ page 32.

Charging System

 illuminates red.


Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off engine. Vehicle battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted. The brake servo unit

may cease to be effective. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Fault Indicator Light

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates or flashes yellow when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Fault in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Flashes when the engine is running

The engine management system has a fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Service Vehicle Soon


 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.

May illuminate together with other control indicators and a corresponding message on the cluster.

Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Stop Engine


 **STOP** illuminates red.

Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.

Illuminates together with other control indicators, accompanied by a warning chime and a corresponding message on the cluster.

Stop the engine immediately and seek the assistance of a workshop.

System Check

 illuminates yellow or red.


Illuminates yellow

A minor engine fault has been detected.

Illuminates red


A major engine fault has been detected. Stop engine as soon as possible and seek the assistance of a workshop.

Hybrid System Fault

 illuminates red.

The hybrid system has a fault. Switch off ignition and seek the assistance of a workshop.

Parking Brake

 illuminates or flashes red.

Illuminates

Parking brake is applied

Flashes

Electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application or the release is faulty.

Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Electric Parking Brake Fault

 illuminates yellow.


Illuminates

Electric parking brake has a fault ⇒ page 113.

Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Brake Warning Light


 When the symbol illuminates red the brake and clutch fluid level is too low, when parking brake is not applied.

Warning

Stop. Do not continue your journey. Consult a workshop.


Illuminates when the manual parking brake is applied and the ignition is switched on.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

 The symbol illuminates yellow for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on.


The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes. If the control indicator does not extinguish after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation. Antilock brake system ⇒ page 163.

Door Open Warning Light

 illuminates red.


A door or the tailgate is open.

Electric Power Steering (EPS) Fault Warning Light

 illuminates red or yellow.



The power steering has a fault. Drive carefully at a moderate speed and consult a workshop.

Lane Keeping Assist

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates yellow

The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.

If  and  illuminate, the system has a fault. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Flashes yellow

The system is correcting the unintended lane change.

Lane Keeping Assist ⇒ page 166

Service Warning Light

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.

May illuminate together with other control indicators and a corresponding message on the cluster.

Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.

If the control indicator does not extinguish after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation. Antilock brake system ⇒ page 163.

Gear Shifting

▲ or ▼ with the number of a higher or lower gear is indicated, when upshifting or downshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system is only active in manual mode.

Manual mode ⇒ page 120.

Parking Brake

 illuminates or flashes red.

Illuminates

Parking brake is applied.


Flashes

Electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application or the release are faulty.

Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Electric Parking Warning Light

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates Electric parking brake has a fault.

Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Automatic operation of electric parking brake off

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates

Automatic operation is deactivated or faulty. In the event of a fault, it illuminates together with other control indicators or it is accompanied by a corresponding message on the cluster.

Activate automatic operation again or have the cause remedied by a workshop in the event of a fault.

Automatic operation ⇒ page 113.



Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Active Warning Light



illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

A fault in the system is present. Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

After reconnecting the vehicle battery, (e.g. after maintenance work),  is illuminated for several seconds. After this time period,  extinguishes. This is a normal procedure, the vehicle does not need any assistance.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree. Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system ⇒ page 163.

Engine Coolant Temperature



illuminates red.

Illuminates red when the engine is running Stop, switch off engine.

Caution

Coolant temperature too high.

Check coolant level immediately ⇒ page 214.

If there is sufficient coolant, consult a workshop.

Exhaust Filter



The symbol illuminates yellow when the exhaust filter requires cleaning. Continue driving until the control indicator extinguishes.

Illuminates temporarily

Start of saturation of the exhaust filter. Start cleaning process as soon as possible by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 60 km/h.

Tire Deflation Detection System



illuminates or flashes yellow.


Illuminates

Tire pressure loss in one or more wheels. Stop immediately and check the tire pressure.


Flashes

Fault in the system. Consult a workshop. Tire Deflation Detection System ⇒ page 221

Preheating

 illuminates yellow. Preheating of diesel engine is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low. Start the engine when control indicator extinguishes. Starting the engine ⇒ page 109.

AdBlue

AdBlue  flashes or illuminates yellow.

Illuminates yellow

The remaining driving range is between 800 km and 2400 km.

Flashes yellow

The remaining driving range is between 0 and 800 km. AdBlue level is low. Refill AdBlue soon to avoid prevention of the engine start. AdBlue ⇒ page 122.



Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Warning Light



illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates yellow

The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.

If  and  illuminate, the system has a fault. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Flashes yellow

The system is correcting the unintended lane change.

Lane keep assist ⇒ page 166.

Advanced Lane Keep Assist



illuminates grey, green or yellow.

Illuminates grey

The system is paused. At least one system limitation has been detected.

Illuminates green



The system is active and ready to operate.

Illuminates yellow

The system has a fault.

Advanced lane keep assist ⇒ page 166.

Parking Assist

  flashes yellow as soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle.

Parking assist.

  illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

Electronic Stability Control And Anti-Slip Regulator




illuminates or flashes yellow.


Illuminates

The Anti-slip regulator is selected off (snowy or icy conditions), or a fault in the system is present.

Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

After reconnecting the vehicle battery,

(e.g. after maintenance work),  is illuminated for several seconds. After this

time period,  extinguishes. This is a normal procedure, the vehicle does not need any assistance.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged.

Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

Electronic Stability Control ⇒ page 163.

Anti Slip Regulator ⇒ page 162.

Low Fuel Warning Light



illuminates yellow.

Level in fuel tank is too low.

Refuelling ⇒ page 126.

Bleeding the diesel fuel system ⇒ page 210.

Vehicle Ready

READY illuminates green. The hybrid system is active.

Reduced Engine Power



illuminates yellow.

The charging level of the high voltage battery is low. Only reduced engine power is available.

Charging Cable Connected

 illuminates red.

The vehicle plug of the charging cable is still connected to the charge port.

The vehicle cannot be started.

Disconnect the vehicle plug from the charge port and close the charge port flap.

Charging ⇒ page 128.

Engine Check-Malfunction Indicator (MIL) Warning Light



illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Fault in the emission control system.

The permitted emission limits may be exceeded. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Flashes when the engine is running

Fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Warning Light



illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

Tire pressure loss in one or more wheels. Stop immediately and check tire pressure.

Flashes

Fault in system. Consult a workshop.

Deflation detection system ⇒ page 221.

Engine Oil Pressure



illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Caution

Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and / or locking of the drive wheels.

1. Select neutral gear.
2. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.
3. Switch off ignition.

Warning

When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

During an Autostop, the brake servo unit will still be operational.

Do not remove key until vehicle is stationary, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Keep engine turned off and let the vehicle be towed to a workshop.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) Warning Light




illuminates for a few seconds or permanently.

Illuminates for a few seconds


If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit provided by the traffic sign assistant, the speed limit displayed on the cluster flashes and an audible signal is given. If flashing and audible signal are

deactivated, illuminates for a few seconds.

Illuminates permanently

If the traffic sign assistant has a fault,  illuminates permanently.

Stop the vehicle and check, if the

camera needs to be cleaned. If  still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a workshop.


Traffic sign assistant ⇒ page 183.

Driver Alert

 illuminates yellow.

The driver alert is deactivated.

Driver Attention Warning By Camera (Drowsiness Alert)

 If driver drowsiness is detected by camera by driving above 65 km/h, a light and an audible signal is emitted (according to the continuous eye closures duration). (2)

Door Open

 illuminates red.

A door or the tailgate is open.

Exterior Lights

 illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on.

Automatic Low Beam Indicator Light

 illuminates green.

Illuminated when low beam is on.

Ready To Drive Indicator Light

READY illuminates green.

The vehicle is ready to be driven.

High Voltage Battery Temperature High

 illuminates red.

Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.

Illuminates together with other control indicators, accompanied by a warning chime and a corresponding message on the cluster.


Stop engine immediately and evacuate the vehicle.

Apply Footbrake

 illuminates.

Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal. Depress the brake pedal before releasing the parking brake and moving out of P.

Autostop

 illuminates or flashes green.

Illuminates green

Engine is in an Autostop.

Flashes green

Autostop is temporarily unavailable, or Autostop mode is invoked automatically. Stop-start system ⇒ page 111.

 Illuminates yellow

Hybrid 48 V vehicle: automatic switching to electrical engine only has been deactivated manually.

Automatic transmission, **Hybrid 48 V** characteristics ⇒ page 115.


Automatic High Beam Indicator Light

 illuminates blue.

Illuminates when high beam is on or during headlight flash.

High Beam Indicator Light

AUTO

 illuminates green or yellow.

Illuminates green when the high beam assist is activated ⇒ page 47.

Illuminates yellow when a malfunction has been detected. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Pedestrian Safety Alert Fault



illuminates yellow.
The pedestrian safety alert is not working.

Rear Fog Light



illuminates yellow.
The rear fog light is on.

Rain Sensor



illuminates green.
Illuminates when rain sensor position on wiper lever is selected.
Windscreen wiper and washer ⇒ page 43.

Active Emergency Braking



illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

The system has been deactivated or a fault has been detected.
Additionally, a warning message is displayed on the cluster.
Check the reason of the deactivation ⇒ page 156 and in case of a system fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Note

also illuminates if the seat belts of the front passengers are not fastened.
In this case, active emergency braking is deactivated.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged and brakes automatically the vehicle.
Active emergency braking ⇒ page 156.

Traffic Sign Assistant



illuminates for a few seconds or permanently.

Illuminates for a few seconds

If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit provided by the traffic sign assistant, the speed limit displayed in the cluster flashes and an audible signal is given.
If flashing and audible signal are

deactivated, illuminates for a few seconds.

Illuminates permanently

If the traffic sign assistant has a failure,



illuminates permanently.
Stop the vehicle and check, if the

camera needs to be cleaned. If still

illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a workshop
Traffic sign assistant ⇒ page 183.

Driver Drowsiness Detection



illuminates yellow.
The driver drowsiness detection is deactivated.
Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD) ⇒ page 180.

E-SAVE Function



illuminates blue.
The e-SAVE function is activated.
Depending on the situation, the function allows electricity to be stored for use when needed (e.g. passing through an urban area or an area reserved for electric vehicles).

Vehicle Messages

Messages are indicated on the cluster, in some cases together with a warning chime.



Press to confirm a message.

Vehicle and service messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

Messages in the Info Display

Some important messages may appear additionally in the Info Display. Some messages only pop up for a few seconds.

Vehicles with navigation system


The vehicle recognises low emission zones. An audible message is given when entering or exiting a low emission zone and an icon will be shown on the navigation map.

PHEV: When entering low emission zones, the vehicle automatically switches to electric drive mode, if the state of charge of the traction battery is sufficient. Drive Modes ⇨ page 120.

Warning Chimes

The warning chime regarding not fastened seat belts has priority over any other warning chime.

Whenever a warning chime sounds, pay attention to the messages displayed and the warning lights on the cluster.

When a failure is detected in the sound module  appears on the cluster, accompanied by a display message. No warning chime will sound, also not for the driver assistance systems.

When starting the engine or whilst driving

A warning chime will sound in situations such as

- a seat belt is not fastened
- a door or the tailgate is not fully closed
- a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied
- cruise control deactivates automatically

If several warnings appear at the same time, only one warning chime will sound.

When the vehicle is parked and / or the driver's door is opened

With exterior lights on.

During an Autostop

- If the driver's door is opened.
- If any condition for a restart of the engine is not fulfilled.

Climate Controls

Electronic Climate Control System








Single-zone climate control.






Dual-zone climate control.

The dual zone climate control allows different temperatures for driver side and front passenger side.

Controls for:

- ▲ ▼ Temperature
- A/C Cooling
- AUTO Automatic mode
- A/C Max Maximum cooling
-  Fan speed
-  Demisting and defrosting
-  Heated rear window and exterior mirrors
-  Manual air recirculation
-  Heated rear window ⇨ page 16

-  Heated exterior mirrors ⇨ page 17
-  Heated windshield ⇨ page 16
-  Heated seats ⇨ page 24


In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.

Activated functions are indicated in the status bar on the Info Display or with LEDs in the buttons.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Climate control settings menu



Press  to open the climate settings on the Info Display.

Info Display ⇨ page 94.

Automatic mode AUTO

Basic setting for maximum comfort:

- Preselect temperature.
- Press **AUTO**, the air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically. Three different pre-set fan speeds can be selected by repeatedly tapping on **AUTO** either on the climate control panel or on the Info Display: soft, normal or fast. The selected setting is shown on the Info Display.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.
- Air conditioning must be activated for optimal cooling and demisting. Press **A/C** to switch on air conditioning. Activation is indicated in the status bar on the Info Display or by the LED in the button.

Temperature preselection

Set the preselected temperature on the Info Display or by using ▲ ▼ on the climate control panel. The preselected temperature is indicated in the status bar on the Info Display.

Dual zone climate control: Set the preselected temperatures separately for driver and front passenger to the

desired value on the Info Display or by using the left and right buttons on the climate control panel. The button on the passenger side changes the temperature for the passenger side.

The button on the driver's side changes the temperature for the driver's side or for both sides depending on activation of synchronisation **SYNC**.

Recommended temperature is 22 °C. If the minimum temperature is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling.

If the maximum temperature is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

Note

If **A/C** is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ page 111.

Dual zone temperature synchronisation SYNC

Touch **SYNC** in the climate control settings on the Info Display to activate / deactivate synchronisation of the passenger side temperature setting to the driver side temperature setting. Activation of synchronisation is indicated in the status bar on the Info Display.

Manual settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the following functions:

Air conditioning A/C

Press **A/C** to switch on cooling.

Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and cooling fan is switched on. Activation is indicated in the status bar on the Info Display.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

A/C Max

Activate maximum cooling with one push of a button.

The **A/C Max** function sets temperature as low as possible and adjusts distribution to all air vents. In addition, it sets air flow to maximum and activates air recirculation.


Note

If the climate control is set to maximum cooling while the ambient temperature is high, an Autostop may be inhibited

until the required temperature in the passenger compartment has been reached.

If the climate control is set to maximum cooling while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine may restart automatically.

Fan speed

Adjust the air flow by pushing  up or down to the desired speed.


Set speed to the lowest level: fan and cooling are switched off.

Fan speed is indicated in the status bar on the Info Display.

To return to automatic mode, press

AUTO.

Air distribution





Press  to open the climate settings on the Info Display.

Select climate control options from the menu on the left side of the screen and set the desired air distribution along with fan speed and temperature.

Settings are indicated in the status bar on the Info Display.

To return to automatic air distribution, press **AUTO**.

Demisting and defrosting the windows



- Press . Activation is indicated in the status bar on the Info Display.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- Switch on air conditioning by pressing **A/C**, if required.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Switch on heated windshield .
- To return to previous mode, press  again. To return to automatic mode, press **AUTO**.


Heated rear window ⇒ page 16.

Heated exterior mirrors ⇒ page 17.

Heated windshield ⇒ page 16.


Note


If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.

If  is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system ⇒ page 111.

Manual air recirculation

Press  to activate the air recirculation mode. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

Press  again to deactivate recirculation mode.

Warning



The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode.

In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside.

The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windshield may mist up from outside, when cold air is directed towards it. If windshield mists up from outside, activate windshield wiper and deactivate air flow to the front.

Deactivation of electronic climate control system

Push down  subsequently or push down and hold  until the electronic climate control system is deactivated.

Deactivation is also possible in the climate settings menu on the Info Display.

Activation by pressing **AUTO**, switching on the fan or switching on any other climate control function.

Air Quality

The system combines a high efficiency interior air filter with an air quality sensor and a particle sensor in the control console.



Select Air Quality from the menu on the left side of the screen to show the air quality index and to activate / deactivate the function.

Air quality index

Using an exterior pollution sensor, this function automatically activates the air recirculation when a certain level of pollution in the exterior air is detected. When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, air recirculation is automatically deactivated. Air recirculation is automatically activated when the windshield washer is used or when reverse gear is engaged. The function is inactive if the outside temperature is below 5° C to prevent the windshield and side windows of misting up.

Clean air function

The particle sensor in the control console monitors the interior air quality. Air recirculation is automatically managed to enable the interior air being purified by filtering it through the high efficiency filter. If the air quality appears to be reduced permanently, contact a qualified workshop to change the high efficiency filter.

Air Heater

Quickheat is an electric auxiliary air heater which automatically warms up the passenger compartment more quickly.

Temperature Preconditioning

Temperature preconditioning allows to heat or to ventilate the vehicle's interior to reach an automatically predefined temperature. Days and times of temperature preconditioning can be programmed.

The temperature preconditioning can be programmed via the Info Display or the MyOpel App.

Note

The temperature preconditioning is only activated if the ignition is off and the vehicle is locked.

If the charging level of the high voltage battery is below 30%, the temperature preconditioning is not activated.

When the vehicle is plugged in, battery charging takes precedence over preconditioning.

Consequently, it can only be activated if the battery is charged above a threshold fixed at 80%.


If a recurrent heating / ventilation is programmed and two heating / ventilation procedures are carried out without operating the vehicle, the programming is deactivated.

Setting timer


Note


Several timers can be programmed and saved. It is recommended to programme temperature preconditioning with the vehicle plugged in, in order to optimise the long-term performance of the high voltage battery.



Press  to open climate settings on the Info Display.


Select preconditioning settings from the menu on the left side of the screen.

Select  to define a new timer or touch

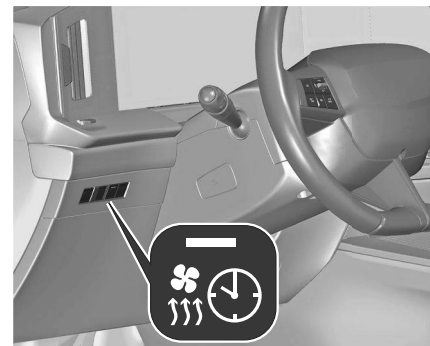
 next to a timer to edit it.


Set time and days and confirm.

Activate the timer.

To delete a timer, select the desired timer and press  at the lower left corner of the screen.

The heating / ventilation procedure starts approx. 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is plugged in, or 20 minutes before the programmed time when it is not plugged in, and is maintained ten minutes after it.



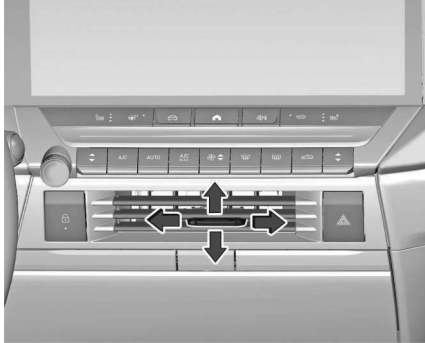
The LED on  shows the operating status of the temperature preconditioning:

- LED illuminates: A timer has been set and activated.
- LED flashes: The system is operating.

The LED extinguishes at the end of the heating / ventilation operation or when the temperature preconditioning is stopped using the remote control.

Air Vents

Centre air vents in the instrument panel



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.
To close the vent, swivel the slats to the left.

Outer air vents in the instrument panel



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.
To close the vent, swivel the slats to the left.
At least two air vents must be open while cooling is on.

Warning

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Air vents for rear passenger



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.
Close the vent by turning the wheel.

Fixed Air Vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windshield and door windows and in the foot wells..

Maintenance

Air intake



The air intake in front of the windshield in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Air Conditioning Regular Operation

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

Service

For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration, including:

- functionality and pressure test
- heating functionality
- leakage check
- check of drive belts
- cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- performance check

Displays

Info Display



The Info Display can indicate:


- Time;
- Outside temperature;
- Date;
- Infotainment system ⇒ page 98
- Navigation ⇒ page 104
- Vehicle and system messages ⇒ page 87
- Settings for vehicle customization ⇒ page 99


Selecting menus and settings


There are three options to operate the display:

- Via buttons below the display;
- By touching the touchscreen with the finger;
- Via the voice assistant.

Button and touch operation

Press  to display the menu for the driver assistance systems.

Press  to display the home screen.

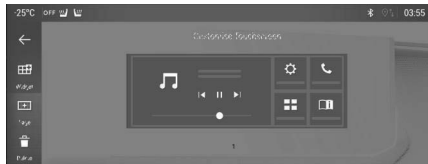
Press  to display the climate menu. Touch required menu display icon or a function with the finger.

Confirm a required function or selection by touching.

Infotainment system ⇨ page 98.

Personalisation



The Info Display can be personalised via the personalisation menu



Several pages can be created by choosing widgets to be displayed. Personalisation ⇨ page 99.

Powerflow

This menu displays the current energy flow within the electric system. The components will be highlighted when they are active.



1. Press .
2. Touch .
3. Select **Energy Flow**.

Different colours show which engine is used and whether energy is regenerated.

- green: regenerating energy
- orange: combustion engine operating (PHEV)
- blue: electric engine operating

Average consumption

This menu displays the average power and fuel consumption during the current trip. The current trip is subdivided into time steps. For each time step, the average consumption is displayed. The time steps can be modified.

1. Press .
2. Touch .

3. Select **Statistics**.

4. Press + and - to modify the time steps.

Power consumption

The consumption of electrical power is displayed in kWh/100 km.

- The green graph shows the energy regenerated during deceleration and braking phases to recharge the high voltage battery.
- The blue graph shows the energy consumed directly from the high voltage battery.

Fuel consumption

The orange graph shows the average fuel consumption on the current trip in litre per 100 kilometres and historical values.


Head Up Display

This extended head-up display projects information onto the windshield in the driver's field of vision so that they do not need to take their eyes off the road.

Note

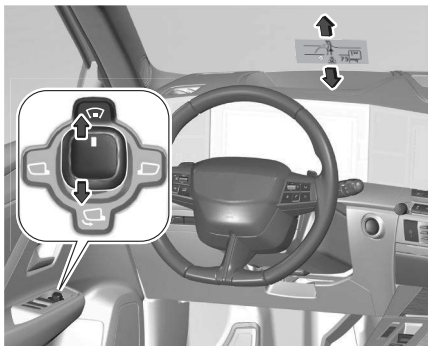
The head-up display may not be legible when wearing polarised sunglasses.


Activation

The head-up display can be activated or deactivated via the brightness menu in the settings app  in the Info Display. Also the brightness of the head-up display can be adjusted. Settings menu ⇒ page 99.

Height adjustment

The height of the head-up display can be adjusted via the control in the driver's door.



Select the head-up display by turning the control to .

Then swivel the control forwards or backwards until the desired height is adjusted.

Interior care ⇒ page 225.

Personalisation

The content of the head-up display can be chosen via the menu in the Info Display.



One widget can be chosen for the head-up display.

Personalisation ⇒ page 99.

Energy Application (PHEV Or BEV)

Energy flow

The page shows the operation of the electric drive train in real time. The energy flows have a specific color for each type of driving

- Blue: energy consumption
- Green: energy recovery
- White : Energy from Petrol engine

Statistics

This page shows the history of electrical energy consumption.

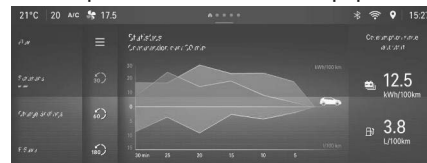
- Upper graph (blue): energy consumed directly from the traction battery.
- Lower graph (green): energy regenerated during deceleration and braking phases used to recharge the traction battery.

The average result for the current trip is stated in kWh/100 km.

It is possible to view data for the last 300, 60 or 30 miles (500, 100 or 50 kilometers) by clicking on the corresponding value on the left of the graph.

Usage

This page shows the different types of consumption of the vehicle's equipment



- Blue graph: energy consumed directly from the traction battery.

1. Average electrical consumption for the current trip (kWh/100 km) and historical values:

- Blue graph: energy consumed directly from the traction battery.

- Green graph: energy regenerated during deceleration and braking phases used to recharge the traction battery.

2. Average fuel consumption for the current trip (l/100 km) and historical values (orange graph).

E-SAVE (PHEV)

The **e-SAVE** function makes it possible to reserve all or part of the electrical energy of the traction battery to be used later during a journey (e.g. passing through an urban area or an area reserved for BEV vehicles).

- Activate the function by pressing **Set e-SAVE** , then select the electric range to be reserved (**6 miles (10 km)** , **12 miles (20 km)** or the full range **Maximum**).



Activation of the function is confirmed by the activation of this indicator light on the instrument panel and the indication of the energy reserve in miles or kms.

- To use the energy reserve, choose the **BEV** driving mode in the mode selector.

Warning

If the requested range exceeds the available range (not recommended), the internal combustion engine starts to recharge the traction battery up to the requested threshold. This leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Infotainment System

Introduction about Infotainment

System.....	98
Menu	98
Profiles	98
Updating the system	99
Customization	99
Screen Operations.....	100
Cybersecurity.....	101
Radio	101
Choosing The Media.....	101
Playing A Track.....	101
Choosing The Radio Frequency.....	101
Selecting A Radio Station	102
Memorizing A Radio Station	102
Audio Settings.....	102
Activating Traffic	
Announcements	102
Multimedia System	102
General Information.....	102
Steering Wheel Controls.....	103
Applications.....	103
Voice Commands	104
Navigation	104
Connectivity.....	105
Screen Mirroring.....	106
Phone.....	107
Settings.....	107
Help.....	107

Introduction about Infotainment System

Warning

The Infotainment system must be used so that the vehicle can be driven safely at all times. If in doubt, stop the vehicle and operate the Infotainment system while the vehicle is stationary.





Radio reception

Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:

- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multipath reception due to reflection
- shadowing

Menu




-  : Short press: switch the system on / off or mute the sound. Long press: switch to standby mode. Rotate: adjust the volume
-  : Displays the driver assistance systems menu
-  : Display the home screen.
-  : Displays the climate settings menu


Profiles

Several user profiles can be created. Due to the option of creating profiles, the Infotainment system can be fitted to


several drivers. Different settings as well as saved radio stations and destinations will be connected to a specific profile. Thereby, the settings don't need to be adjusted every time another person is driving the vehicle.

To display the profile settings, open the settings app  and touch the profile menu.



Creating a profile

To create a new profile, touch . The following settings can be adjusted for each profile:

- profile name
- avatar
- associated device


Once a new profile is created, the profile settings can be changed at any time by touching .

Deleting a profile

To delete a profile, touch  next to the corresponding profile and select . The guest profile cannot be deleted. The guest profile is a default profile. It is active when no other profile is created or active.

Updating The System

When an update is available and ready to install, a message will be displayed at the end of a trip after stopping the vehicle.

Alternatively, open the settings app  and touch the menu for updates to check if an update is available. If available, pending updates will be displayed on the screen.


It is possible to activate automatic downloads of updates by touching the checkbox. If activated, the updates will be automatically downloaded when the vehicle is connected to an external Wi-Fi network.

The installation of an update will continue even if the vehicle will be left and closed. When the vehicle has started again, a message will be displayed on the screen if the installation of the update has been successfully finished.

When the installation has been failed, a corresponding message will be displayed on the screen. Contact an assistance centre.

Customization

The Instrument Panel Cluster, the head-up display and the Info Display can be personalised.

To display the personalisation menu, open the settings application  and touch the menu for customisation.

Screen colour

The background colour of the Instrument Panel Cluster and the Info Display can be chosen. The chosen background colour will immediately be shown in both Instrument Panel Cluster and Info Display.

Interior colour

The colour of interior lighting features, e.g. the light on the door handles, can be chosen.

Sound ambience

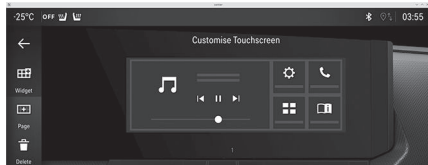
An active sport sound for the sport mode can be activated or deactivated.

Animations

Exterior and interior animations to welcome and say good bye to the driver can be activated or deactivated.


Pages

Several personalised pages for the Instrument Panel Cluster and the Info Display can be created. The head-up display belongs to the Instrument Panel Cluster page.



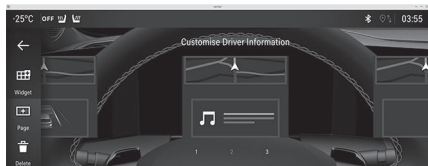
Each page can be personalised by choosing the widgets to be displayed.

To add a page, touch .


To delete a page, touch .

Widgets

A widget is the indication of specific information or gauge, e.g. radio information, navigation information or the engine coolant temperature gauge.




The Instrument Panel Cluster can display two widgets and the head-up display can display one widget. The Info Display can contain several widgets.

To add a widget to a page, touch .

Some widgets are available in different sizes. The bigger a widget is, the less widgets can be displayed on a page.

Brightness

To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination, the interior lighting and the head-up display, open the settings

app  and touch the menu for the brightness adjustment.

The interior lighting and the head-up display can also be activated or deactivated.

Screen Operations

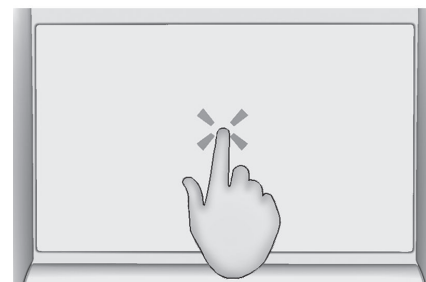
The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

Caution

Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

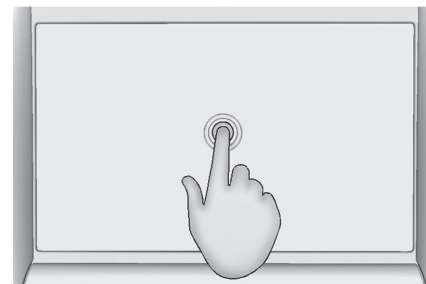
Use the following finger gestures to control the Infotainment system.

Touch



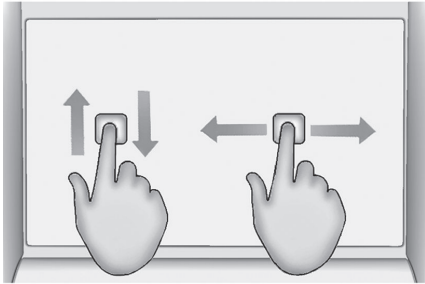
Touch is used to open a menu or select an option.

Touch and hold




Touch and hold can be used to save radio stations.

Swipe




Swipe is used to scroll through a menu or to pan the map.

Returning to the previous screen in a submenu

To return to the previous screen, touch  in the upper part of the screen.

Displaying and hiding the menu

Within an app, the menu can be displayed and hidden by touching .

Cybersecurity

Privacy Settings

The privacy settings can be set for each profile. The following privacy settings can be set:



- share data and location

- share data
- private mode


To use all available connected services without restrictions, it is necessary to share data and location.

When the private mode is activated, connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

The privacy settings can be set via the connectivity menu within the settings app


. Alternatively, the privacy settings can be set via the status bar by touching .


Connected Services

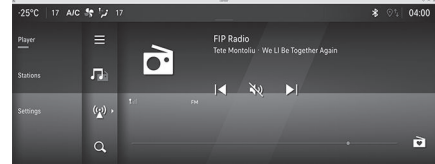
To display the menu for connected services, open the settings app  and touch the corresponding menu entry.

Radio


Choosing The Media

Display the audio screen by touching  in the apps overview.


Touch  to switch between the radio and a connected external device as the audio source.




Playing A Track


Touch  briefly to perform an automatic search for the next radio station.

Touch and hold  to perform a quick search for the next radio stations.

Touch  briefly to perform an automatic search for the previous radio station.


Touch and hold  to perform a quick search for the previous radio stations.

Mute


To mute or unmute, touch .


Choosing The Radio Frequency

Waveband

To select the waveband, touch .

Frequency tuning


To tune into a specific radio frequency, touch .

A number pad will be displayed. Enter the desired frequency and touch  to confirm.


Selecting A Radio Station

All available radio stations will be displayed as a list by touching the list entry in the radio menu on the left side of the screen.

Memorizing A Radio Station

Saved radio stations will be displayed or hidden by touching . The saved radio stations will be lined up in the lower part of the screen. Touch the desired radio station to tune in.

To save the current radio station, touch and hold the desired button. Buttons which are already used for radio stations can be overwritten. Unused buttons for saving radio stations

will be indicated by .

Alternatively, radio stations can be saved by touching the corresponding heart icon in the station list.


Audio Settings

In the settings menu within the radio app, the following settings can be adjusted:

- sound settings: ambience sound, equaliser, treble

- radio settings: station list order, activation or deactivation of station follow-up and traffic and news announcements
- volume settings: system voice, ringtone, phone call, system sounds

Activating Traffic Announcements

Traffic announcement is a service of FM radio stations. When traffic programme is activated, the currently playing audio source will be interrupted when an FM radio station is broadcasting traffic news. The audio source will be switched back when the traffic news are over. Traffic announcements can be activated or deactivated in the radio settings .

Multimedia System

General Information

Note

The functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of the vehicle, and according to the country of sale.

Warning

The system is protected in such a way as to operate only on your vehicle. For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth®.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to Mirror Screen (Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

Some functions cannot be accessible when driving.

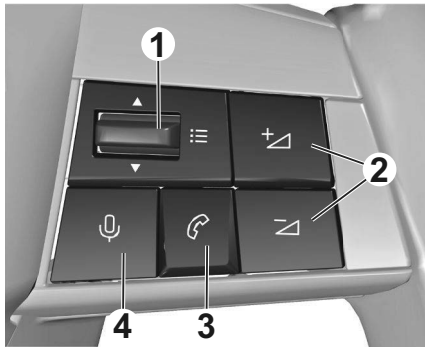
Status bar


The status bar is the top bar on the screen. It can indicate the following:

- time
- outside temperature
- Wi-Fi connection status
- Bluetooth activation
- mobile reception

- activated functions, e.g. heated steering wheel

Steering Wheel Controls



- 1** : Toggle up or down: select the previous / next radio station or track or browse through the list of recent calls.
Short press: display a menu or validate a selection.
- 2** : Short press: adjust the volume or unmute the sound.
Long press on : mute the sound.
- 3** : Short press: accept an incoming call, hang up, display the list of recent calls or display the phone projection screen.
Long press: refuse an incoming call.

- 4** : Short press: activate the voice assistant of the Infotainment system.
Long press: activate the voice assistant of the connected mobile phone.

Applications



From the home page, press this button to access the applications wall.

Note

From any page, press the touch screen with three or more fingers to display the applications wall.



Help

Access the handbook and watch tutorials.



Media

Select an audio source or radio station.



Mirror Screen®

Smartphone connected with Mirror Screen®: access to the projected view of Apple®Car-Play® or Android Auto.

Smartphone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a smartphone.



Navigation

(depending on equipment)

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



Voice commands

(depending on equipment)

Use the system or smartphone voice recognition via the system



Phone

Telephone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a telephone.

Telephone connected: access the call log, contacts and telephone settings.
Two connected telephones: access the contents of the priority telephone with the possibility of changing the priority of the telephone.





Settings



Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.


Voice Commands

The integrated voice assistant can be used to operate the Info Display system via voice commands.


There are three ways to activate the voice assistant:

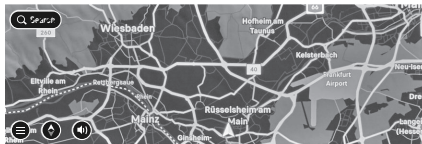
- press  on the steering wheel
- touch  in the Information Display
- say "Hey Opel"

After pressing  on the steering wheel or touching  in the Information Display, wait for the beep before saying a voice command.


To display some voice command examples, open the help menu  in the Information Display. The examples will be sorted by categories, e.g. radio or navigation.

Navigation

Touch  in the Info Display to open the navigation app.




Starting a route guidance

To start a route guidance, touch  to enter an address via a keyboard. After typing the first letters of the address, matching addresses will be displayed.

Once the address is entered, several routes might be displayed on the map. Choose one before starting the route guidance.

Active route guidance


During an active route guidance, information about the route, e.g. the estimated arrival time and the distance, will be displayed on the screen.


To activate or deactivate voice prompts of the route guidance, touch .


To change the route, add a stop, e.g. a restaurant or a petrol station, or to show instructions, touch the three points on the side bar of the screen.


Route settings


To open the settings menu, touch the three points on the side bar of the screen

and then touch the settings menu .

Touch  to view map downloads, to set the map colour, to set the points of interest shown on the map and other map settings, to set the arrival information, to set the side bar on the route guidance screen, to set the map orientation or to show the vehicle range on the map.



Touch  to set the options for rerouting, to set the preferred route types (fast, short, eco-friendly) or to avoid specific routes (toll roads, unpaved roads, etc.).

Touch  to set the types of voice prompts, alerts and sounds.

Touch  to set the privacy information (keep journey history, frequent destinations, etc.).


Map updates

When connected services are activated, the map of the current region will be updated automatically.

When the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network, the maps of all other regions can be updated via the maps and display menu  within the settings menu .

Connected services ⇒ page 105.

Connectivity

To display the connectivity menu, open the settings app  and touch the menu for connectivity.

The following settings are adjustable:

- wireless devices: display all paired devices, connect or disconnect a device, choose the connection preferences for each device (Bluetooth or phone projection) and search for nearby devices
- Wi-Fi networks: activate or deactivate Wi-Fi, search for nearby Wi-Fi networks and connect the system to a Wi-Fi network
- privacy settings: activate or deactivate data and location sharing for authorised services

Connected Services

Multiple connected services are accessible via app, online or inside the vehicle.

Note

Connected services are not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.

Note



Full functionality of connected services is subject to registration and proper activation.

Connected services may include live navigation such as online traffic information as well as vehicle status and information such as maintenance alerts. Services accessible within the vehicle also include emergency call and assistance call. These functions are automatically activated. Terms and conditions apply.

Emergency call ⇒ page 190.

Correct connectivity settings and privacy settings are necessary to establish the connection to the available connected services.

Connectivity Settings

To display the system settings menu, open the settings app  select . Then select the connectivity menu.

The following settings can be managed:

- wireless devices: display all paired devices, connect or disconnect a device, choose the connection preferences for each device (Bluetooth or phone projection) and search for nearby devices
- Wi-Fi networks: activate or deactivate Wi-Fi, search for nearby Wi-Fi networks and connect the system to a Wi-Fi network

- privacy settings: activate or deactivatedata and location sharing for authorized services

Privacy Settings

The privacy settings can be set for each profile. This function is used with a "Guest" and/or "Driver" profiles:

- pre-configured by default in "Private Mode", or
- to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device.

For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy settings saved will be restored. The following privacy settings can be set:


- share data and location
- share data
- private mode

To use all available connected services without restrictions, it is necessary to share data and location.

When the private mode is activated, connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

The privacy settings can be set via the connectivity menu within the settings app



Alternatively, the privacy settings can be set via the status bar by touching .

Sharing Data and Location



This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.

Note

The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.

Sharing Data



This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed le location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

Note

Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

Note

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).

Private Mode



This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle

Note

Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.


Note

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).

Note

If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

Bluetooth® connection

Touch  in the Info Display to open the phone app.

Once a mobile phone is connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth, the following functions are available via the phone app:

- display the contact list

- display a list of the recent calls
- dial a telephone number via a keyboard

Pairing a mobile phone

To pair a mobile phone, open the settings menu in the phone app in the Info Display.

Open the Bluetooth menu on the mobile phone and activate the function.

Select the mobile phone from the list in the Info Display. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone.

Once the mobile phone is successfully paired, it will be connected automatically and shown as connected.

Also a second mobile phone can be connected via the settings menu in the phone app.

Screen Mirroring

The phone projection applications Apple CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from a smartphone on the Info Display and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls. Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with the smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

Preparing the smartphone

iPhone®: Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.

Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

Connecting the smartphone

Connect the phone to the USB port
⇒ page 56 or connect the phone via Bluetooth.


Make sure phone projection is activated in the connectivity settings.

Starting phone projection

Touch the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto app on the Info Display.

The phone projection screen displayed depends on the smartphone and software version.

Using the voice assistant of the smartphone

Press and hold  on the steering wheel and say the corresponding activation voice command of the smartphone's voice assistant to use the voice assistant of the smartphone via the Infotainment system.

Phone

Making a call

To make a call, choose one of the contacts from the contact list, dial a telephone number via the keyboard or select a number from the recent calls list.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a message on the Info Display.

To accept an incoming call or hang up an active call, touch the corresponding


button on the Info Display or press  on the steering wheel.

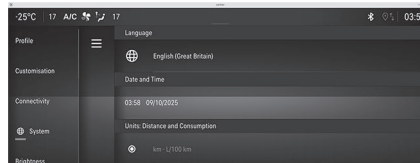
To refuse an incoming call, touch the corresponding button on the Info Display

or press and hold  on the steering wheel.

Settings

To display the system settings menu,

open the settings app  and touch the menu for the system settings .



The following system settings can be adjusted:

- language
- date and time, time format, date format
- unit for distance and consumption
- unit for outside temperature
- restore the factory settings
- view system information

Help



- Press the "Help" application.

Starting & Operating

Starting And Stopping The Engine...	108
New vehicle running-in	108
Starting the engine	109
Steering Wheel Lock	110
Stop & Start Automatic Function ...	111
Brakes.....	113
Parking brake	113
Brake Assist	114
Active Emergency Braking	115
Regenerative Braking	115
Transmission.....	115
Automatic transmission	115
Drive Selector (BEV)	119
Manual transmission.....	120
Free Wheeling.....	120
Driving mode selector.....	120
Drive Modes	120
ICE/Hybrid 48V.....	121
PHEV.....	121
BEV.....	121
Engine Exhaust	122
Exhaust filter.....	122
Catalytic converter	122
AdBlue	122
Fuel	125
Fuels Compatibility.....	125
Refuelling	126
Fuel consumption - CO-	
Emissions	127
Charging.....	128
General information	128

Charging types	129
High voltage battery	131
Charging	132
Programmable charging	135
Charging status	136
Battery Preconditioning.....	137
Plug and Charge.....	137
Vehicle to Load (V2L).....	137
Vehicle Loading.....	138
Roof rack system	138
Trailer Towing	139
Towing Device.....	139
Towing Recommendation.....	143
Driving Tips.....	143
Control Of The Vehicle	143
Emergencies	143

Starting And Stopping The Engine

New Vehicle Running-In

Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

Only tow a trailer after the vehicle has driven at least 1000 kilometers.

During the first drive, smoke may occur because of wax and oil evaporating off the exhaust system.

Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

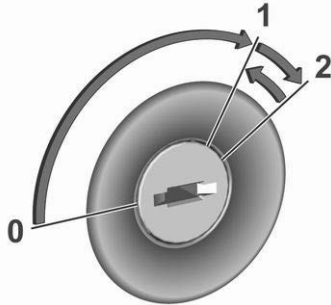
During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be higher.

Additionally, the cleaning process of the exhaust filter may take place more often.

Exhaust filter ⇒ page 122

Starting The Engine

Vehicles with ignition switch



- 0** : ignition off: some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously
- 1** : ignition on power mode: ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating, control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable
- 2** : engine start: release key after engine has been started

Turn key to position 1 to release the steering wheel lock.

Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.

Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal.

Do not operate accelerator pedal.

Diesel engines: wait until control indicator

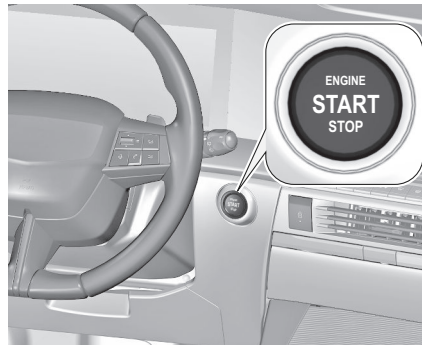
 extinguishes.

Turn key briefly to position 2 and release after engine has been started.

Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal ⇒ page 111.

Automatic transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal ⇒ page 111.

Vehicles with power button



The electronic key must be inside the vehicle.

Engine start

Operate the brake pedal and press Start/Stop.

BEV

- Depress brake pedal
- Press **Start/Stop** button for approx. two seconds
- Keep the brake pedal depressed until READY is displayed in the cluster and an acoustic signal is given

Ignition on power mode without starting the engine

Press **Start/Stop** without operating the brake pedal. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine and ignition off

Press **Start/Stop** briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened.

Emergency shut off during driving

If the engine needs to be switched off during driving in case of emergency, press Start/Stop for five seconds.

⚠ Danger

Switching off the engine during driving may cause loss of power support for brake and steering systems. Assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled.

Lighting and brake lights will extinguish. Therefore power down the engine and ignition while driving only when required in case of emergency.

Starting the vehicle at low temperatures

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery.

With temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission requires a warming phase of approx. five minutes. **P** must be engaged.

Turbo engine warm-up

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

Overrun cut-off

The fuel supply is automatically cut off during overrun, i.e. when the vehicle is driven with a gear engaged but accelerator pedal is released. Depending on driving conditions, the overrun cut-off may be deactivated

Operation in case of failure



In the event of a key battery malfunction, to unlock the Steering Wheel and start the engine, hold the electronic key at the marked location on the steering column cover, as shown in the illustration. For vehicles with manual transmission, select neutral, press the clutch and brake pedals, then press the **Start/Stop** button. For vehicles with automatic transmission, move the gear selector to the parking

(**P**) position, press the brake pedal, then press the **Start/Stop** button.

Steering Wheel Lock

Remove key from ignition switch and turn steering wheel until it engages.

⚠ Warning

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort. Depending on version, the steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- the vehicle is stationary
- the ignition has been switched off

To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch the ignition on power mode or start the engine directly.

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

Warning

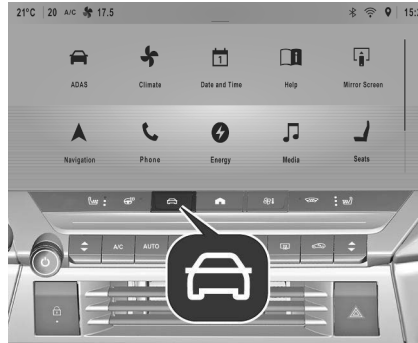
In the event of a fault of the key battery, the steering wheel lock remains engaged. Do not try to start the vehicle by pushing it and do not tow it.


Stop & Start Automatic Function

The Stop & Start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam.



Activation

By default, the system is activated when the ignition is switched on. The system can be manually activated in the Info Display.



Press  and activate the system in the Info Display.
Info Display ⇨ page 94.
The activation of the system is confirmed by a message.

Deactivation

Press  and deactivate the system in the Info Display.
Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of  OFF on the cluster and the display of a message.

Autostop

Vehicles with manual transmission

Activate an Autostop as follows:

- Set the selector lever to neutral.

- Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.


Vehicles with automatic transmission

If the vehicle is at a standstill with depressed brake pedal, Autostop is activated automatically.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

The stop-start system will be disabled on steep inclines.

Indication

An Autostop is indicated by control indicator .

During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

Conditions for an Autostop

The stop-start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled:


- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition
- The engine is warmed up

- The engine coolant temperature is not too high
- The ambient temperature is not too low or too high
- The climate control system allows an Autostop
- The brake vacuum is sufficient
- The self-cleaning function of the exhaust filter is not active
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop

Autostop will be inhibited if these conditions are not met.

In addition, Autostop may be inhibited:

- By certain settings of the climate control system ⇒ page 88
- Immediately after higher speed driving
- In the case of new vehicle running-in ⇒ page 108
- By active demisting
- In the case of steep ascending or descending slopes
- If the vehicle has not exceeded 10 km/h since the last engine start

In these cases, the icon on the cluster  flashes a few seconds and then goes off.

Note

The Autostop may be inhibited for several hours after a battery replacement or reconnection.

Vehicle battery discharge protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several vehicle battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop-start system.

Power saving measures

During an Autostop, several electrical features such as auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

Restart of the engine by the driver

After the engine has been restarted, an Autostop is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 8 km/h.

Vehicles with manual transmission

Depress the clutch pedal without depressing the brake pedal to restart the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine is restarted in the following cases:

- brake pedal released while **D** or **M** is selected

- brake pedal released and **N** selected when selector is moved to select **D** or **M**
- brake pedal depressed and **P** selected when selector is moved to select **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**
- **R** selected

Restart of the engine by the stop-start system

Vehicles with manual transmission: The selector must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.

If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system:

- stop-start system manually deactivated
- driver's seat belt unfastened and driver's door opened
- engine temperature too low
- charging level of vehicle battery below a defined level
- brake vacuum not sufficient
- vehicle is driven or rolls at least at walking speed
- climate control system requests engine start


- air conditioning manually switched on
- the bonnet is opened

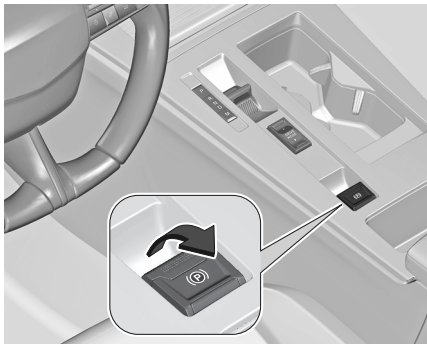
If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

Brakes



Parking Brake

Warning

Before leaving the vehicle, check parking brake status. Control indicator  illuminate constantly when electric parking brake is applied.





Applying when vehicle is stationary

Pull the switch . If the control indicator  illuminates, the electric parking brake is applied.

Control indicator  ⇨ page 81.


The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without the engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

Releasing

Switch on ignition. Keep the brake pedal depressed and then push the switch . If the control indicator  extinguishes, the electric parking brake is released.


Drive away function

Vehicles with manual transmission: Depressing the clutch pedal and then slightly releasing the clutch pedal and slightly depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is only possible if the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is activated.




It is not possible when switch  is pulled at the same time.


Vehicles with automatic transmission: Engaging **R**, **D** or **M** and then depressing


the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is only possible if the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is activated.

It is not possible when switch  is pulled at the same time.

Braking when vehicle is moving

When the vehicle is moving and the switch  is kept pulled, the electric parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle. As soon as the switch  is released, braking will be stopped. The antilock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control stabilise the vehicle while the switch  is kept pulled. If an error of the electric parking brake occurs, a warning message is displayed on the cluster. If the antilock brake system and the Electronic Stability

Control fail, one or both indicators  (ABS)

and  illuminate on the cluster. In this case, stability during deceleration of the vehicle can only be maintained with repeated short pulls of the switch until the vehicle is immobilised.

Automatic operation

Automatic operation includes automatic application and automatic release of the electric parking brake.

The electric parking brake can also be applied or released manually by using the switch (P).

Automatic application:

- The electric parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched off.
- (P) illuminates on the cluster and message is displayed to confirm the application.

Automatic release:

Note

The automatic release of the electric parking brake is inhibited as long as the driver's door is open.


- Parking brake releases automatically on driving off.
- (P) extinguishes on the cluster and a display message pops up to confirm the release.

Deactivation of automatic operation

In certain situations, e.g. in extreme cold weather conditions or when towing,

it may be necessary to deactivate the automatic operation of the electric parking brake.

1. Start the engine.
2. If the parking brake is released, pull the switch (P) to apply the parking brake.
3. Take your foot off the brake pedal.
4. Press the switch (P) for at least ten seconds and maximum 15 seconds.
5. Release the switch (P).
6. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
7. Pull the switch (P) for two seconds.

The deactivation of the automatic operation is confirmed by the illumination of  on the cluster. Now, the electric parking brake can only be applied and released manually.

To reactivate the automatic operation, repeat the steps described above.

The automatic operation can also be deactivated temporarily, i.e. until the next ignition cycle:

1. With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, depress the brake pedal and move the gear selector to the neutral position.

2. While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the ignition.
3. Take your foot off the brake pedal and switch on the ignition.
4. Depress and hold the brake pedal and push the electric parking brake to release it.
5. Take your foot off the brake pedal and switch off the ignition.

To revert to normal operation, depress the brake pedal and switch on the engine.

Automatic transmission ⇨ page 115.
Manual transmission ⇨ page 120.

Fault

Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by a control indicator (P)! and by a message displayed on the cluster. Vehicle messages ⇨ page 87.

Control indicator (P) flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and retry applying.

Brake Assist

If the brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.

The operation of the brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

Active Emergency Braking

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure. It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency ⇒ page 156.

Regenerative Braking

⚠ Warning

In the case of extreme temperatures or if the high voltage battery is almost fully charged, the brake force of the engine braking may be temporarily reduced. If the braking force is not sufficient, the driver has to be prepared to use the brake pedal.

⚠ Warning

Depending on the engine braking force the brake lights are illuminated.

BEV/PHEV: Regenerative braking generates electrical energy resulting from engine braking to charge the high voltage battery.

Electric drive unit ⇒ page 119.

Automatic transmission **PHEV** ⇒ page 117.

Hybrid 48 V vehicle: Regenerative braking generates electrical energy resulting from engine braking to charge the 48 V battery.

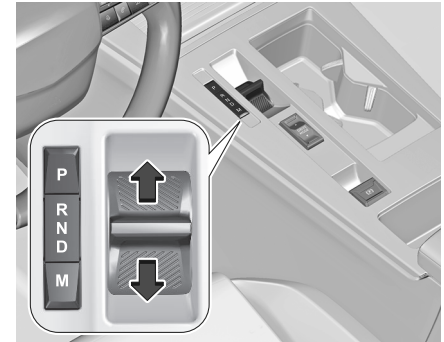
Automatic transmission **Hybrid 48 V** ⇒ page 115.

Transmission

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission permits automatic gearshifting (automatic mode) or manual gearshifting (manual mode).

Automatic transmission (ICE, Hybrid 48 V)



Move the selector or press the respective buttons.

- P** : park mode
- R** : reverse mode
- N** : neutral mode
- D** : drive (automatic) mode
- M** : manual mode

After moving the selector it returns to the centre position. The engaged mode is indicated on the cluster.

Moving the selector beyond the resistance point skips neutral mode **N**.

Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When **D** or **R** is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Park mode P

To engage **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary. In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.

To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

P is automatically engaged when:

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h
- **N** has been selected for some time If the vehicle is moving too fast **P** is not engaged.

Reverse mode R

To engage or disengage **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

Caution

Engaging **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only select **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

Note

In slippery conditions, operate the vehicle in **D** for enhanced riding and handling performance.

This mode is for normal driving.

Manual mode M

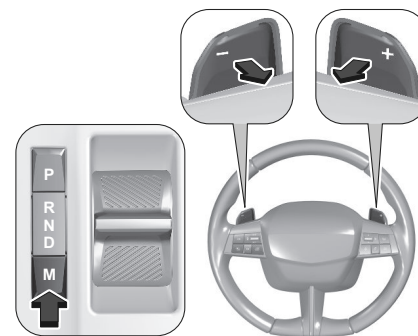
In this mode, it is possible to change gears manually using steering wheel paddles.

Manual mode **M** can only be selected if **D** is engaged.

The selected gear is indicated on the cluster.

If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message on the cluster.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.



Press button **M**.

Pull steering wheel paddles to select gears manually.

Pull right paddle **+** to shift to a higher gear.

Pull left paddle **-** to shift to a lower gear.

Multiple pulls allow gears to be skipped.

Press **M** again to return into **D**.

Deactivation of the automatic operation of the electric parking brake

For this procedure, refer to the description of the automatic parking brake.

Parking brake ⇒ page 113.

Gear shift indication

The symbol ▲ or ▼ with a number beside it is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

Engine braking

Engine braking is only possible in manual mode.

To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill.

Electronic driving programmes

Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.


Special programmes automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.

In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to select manually first, second or third gear for starting off.

Kickdown

Pressing down the accelerator pedal beyond the kickdown detent will lead to maximum acceleration when driving in **D** or **M**. The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a fault,  illuminates and a message is displayed on the cluster.

Vehicle messages ⇒ page 87.

Electronic transmission control enables only third gear. The transmission no longer shifts automatically.

Do not drive faster than 100 km/h.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Interruption of power supply

In the event of an interruption of power supply, it is not possible to select another mode when **P** is engaged.

Towing the vehicle ⇒ page 203.

If the vehicle battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads ⇒ page 201.

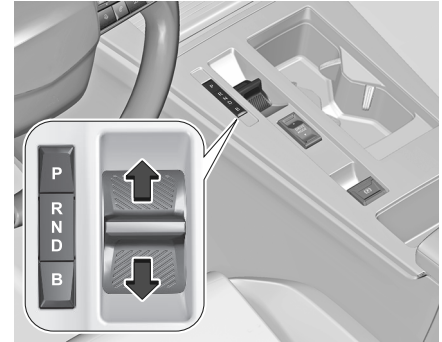
If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Hybrid 48 V characteristics

The electric engine operates during start and acceleration. Driving propelled by the electric engine only is possible at low speeds, e.g. during parking manoeuvres or stop and go traffic. If driving on motorways with a slope at a speed less than 145 km/h, the **ICE** is switched off automatically when possible and the

vehicle is propelled by the electric engine for a short distance.

Automatic transmission PHEV



P park mode

R reverse mode

N neutral mode

D drive (automatic) mode

B brake mode (automatic mode with one-pedal driving)

After moving the selector it returns to the centre position. The engaged mode is indicated on the cluster.

Moving the selector beyond the resistance point skips neutral mode **N**.

Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When **D** or **R** is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Park mode P

To engage **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary. In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.

To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

P is automatically engaged when

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h
- **N** has been selected for some time

If the vehicle is moving too fast **P** is not engaged.

Reverse mode R

To engage or disengage **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

Caution

Engaging **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only select **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

Note

In slippery conditions, operate the vehicle in **D** for enhanced riding and handling performance.

This mode is for normal driving.

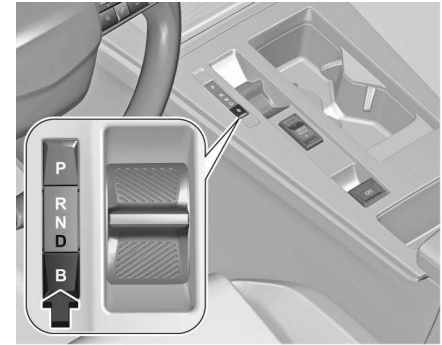
Automatic mode B with one-pedal driving

In this mode, vehicle speed is significantly reduced by releasing the accelerator pedal without operating the brake pedal.

Use **B** when driving down steep hills, in deep snow, in mud or in stop-and-go traffic.

Warning

In the case of extreme temperatures or if the high-voltage battery is almost fully charged, the brake force of the regenerative braking may be temporarily reduced. If the braking force is not sufficient, the driver has to be prepared to use the brake pedal.



To activate **B**, select **D** and press button **B**.

To deactivate **B**, press button **B**.

Regenerative braking ⇒ page 115.

Deactivation of the automatic operation of the electric parking brake

For this procedure, refer to the description of the automatic parking brake.

Parking brake ⇒ page 113.

PHEV characteristics

The electric engine is integrated into the automatic transmission.

Whenever possible the vehicle is propelled by the electric engine. In addition, the drive mode can be selected. Drive modes ⇒ page 120.

The high voltage battery is charged using a charging cable and additionally by engine braking.

Drive Selector (BEV)

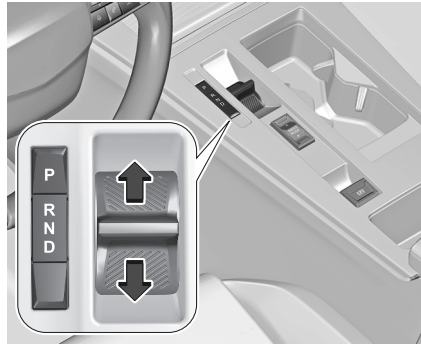
The vehicle uses an electric drive unit with a 1-gear transmission.

Caution

If the vehicle seems to accelerate slowly or not respond when you try to go faster, do not continue your journey. The electric drive unit could be damaged. Consult a workshop as soon as possible.

Caution

Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the electric drive unit. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.



Move the selector or press the respective buttons.

- P** : park mode
- R** : reverse mode
- N** : neutral mode
- D** : drive (automatic) mode

After moving the selector it returns to the centre position. The engaged mode is indicated on the cluster.

Moving the selector beyond the resistance point skips neutral mode **N**.

Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When **D** or **R** is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Park mode P

To engage **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary. In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked. To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

P is automatically engaged when

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h
- **N** has been selected for some time

If the vehicle is moving too fast **P** is not engaged.

Reverse mode R

To engage or disengage **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

Caution

Engaging **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only select **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this position, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

This mode is for normal driving.

Manual Transmission



To engage reverse, with the vehicle stationary and engine at idle depress the clutch pedal, pull the ring under the selector lever and engage the gear. If the gear does not engage, set the selector lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again. Then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily.

When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

When clutch slip is detected for a specific time, the engine power will be reduced.

A warning is displayed on the cluster.

Release the clutch.

Caution

It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the selector lever.

Gear shift indication ⇒ page 115.

Stop-start system ⇒ page 111

Free Wheeling

In certain situations, e.g., in an automatic car wash etc., it is necessary that the wheels can move freely when the engine is switched off.

To enable free wheeling, the vehicle has to be stationary, the engine has to be running and the driver's door has to be closed.

ICE and BEV

1. Depress the brake pedal and select **N**.
2. Within five seconds, depress and hold the brake pedal, switch off ignition and move the selector forwards or backwards.
3. Release the brake pedal and switch on ignition.
4. Depress and hold the brake pedal and push the switch^(Ⓢ).

5. Release the brake pedal and switch off ignition.

A message is displayed on the cluster indicating that the wheels are unblocked for the next 15 minutes.

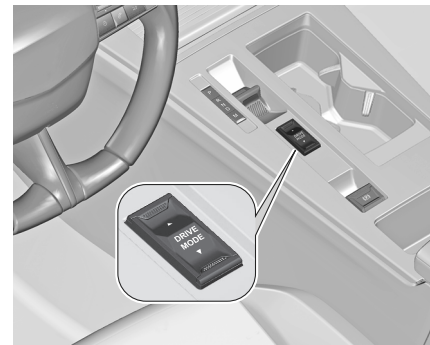
To revert to normal operation, depress and hold the brake pedal, switch on the engine and press P.

Hybrid 48 V

No free wheeling with the engine switched off.

Driving Mode Selector

Drive Modes



To select the respective drive mode, use the shown toggle switch.

Propulsion types ⇒ page 3.

ICE/Hybrid 48V

The following drive modes are selectable.

Normal mode

The settings in this mode are set by default. Everytime the ignition is switched on, this mode is selected.

Sport mode

Vehicles with manual transmission:

This mode allows to obtain a more dynamic driving with action on the power steering, accelerator and the possibility of displaying the vehicle's dynamic settings on the instrument panel.

Vehicles with automatic transmission:

This mode allows to obtain a more dynamic driving with action on the power steering, accelerator and gear changes. Depending on version, it is possible to display the vehicle's dynamic settings on the instrument panel and activate / deactivate the display colour.

Eco mode

This mode reduces the fuel consumption by optimising the operation of the heating and air conditioning.

While coasting the vehicle, the engine is idling with reduced engine brake.

PHEV

The following drive modes are selectable.

Sport mode

This mode combines the power of the combustion engine and the electric engine. This mode is fully electric driving for speeds below 30 km/h.

Hybrid mode

This mode optimises the vehicle's fuel consumption by simultaneous or alternation operation of internal combustion engine and electrical engine depending on driving conditions and driving style.

In this mode, driving 100% electrically is possible if the charge level of the high voltage battery is sufficient and acceleration requirements are modest.

Electric mode

In this mode, the vehicle is driven by the electric engine only. Electric propulsion is available for speeds below 135 km/h.

This mode is selected by default when the vehicle is started. If the conditions do not allow this mode, a message is displayed and hybrid mode is selected.

BEV

The following drive modes are selectable.

Sport mode

The settings in this mode allow more dynamic driving. The vehicle's dynamic parameters can be displayed in the cluster.

This mode allows maximum electric engine power output.

Normal mode

The settings in this mode are set by default. Everytime the ignition is switched on, this mode is selected. To optimise range, electric engine power output is reduced.

Eco mode

Reduces fuel consumption by optimising the operation of the heating and air conditioning and, depending on version, the accelerator pedal, the automatic transmission and the gear shifting indicator.

While coasting the vehicle, the engine is idling with reduced engine brake.

To optimise range, electric engine power output and heating are reduced.

Engine Exhaust

Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows.



Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.

Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Exhaust Filter

Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases.

The start of saturation of the exhaust filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of  or , accompanied by a message on the cluster.



As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 60 km/h until the control indicator extinguishes.

Note

On a new vehicle, the first exhaust filter regeneration operations may be

accompanied by a burning smell, which is normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, water vapour can be emitted at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Cleaning process not possible

If  or  stays on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates that the exhaust filter additive level is too low.

The reservoir must be topped-up without delay. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

Note

Fuel grades other than those listed could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components. Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter.

Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing. In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems,

have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

AdBlue

General information

The selective catalytic reduction (BlueInjection) is a method to substantially reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust emission. This is achieved by injecting a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) into the exhaust system. The ammonia released by the fluid reacts with nitrous gases (NOx) from the exhaust and turns it into nitrogen and water.

The designation of this fluid is AdBlue®. It is a non-toxic, nonflammable, colourless and odourless fluid which consists of 32% urea and 68% water.

Warning

Avoid contact of your eyes or skin with AdBlue®. In case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

Caution

Avoid contact of the paintwork with AdBlue®.
In case of contact, rinse off with water.

AdBlue freezes at a temperature of approx. -11 °C. As the vehicle is equipped with an AdBlue pre-heater, the emissions reduction at low temperatures is ensured. The AdBlue pre-heater works automatically.

In some circumstances below the mentioned temperature, an error message appears on the cluster. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue is liquefied.


Note


Frozen and again liquefied AdBlue is usable without quality loss.
The typical AdBlue consumption is approx. 2 l per 1000 km, but can also be higher depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing).


Level warnings

Depending on the calculated range of AdBlue, different messages are displayed on the cluster. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.


1. The first warning level is entered when the estimated AdBlue range is between 2400 km and 800 km. When switching on the ignition, this warning will show up once briefly with the calculated range.

Additionally, control indicator  will illuminate and a chime will sound. Driving is possible without any restrictions.

2. The next warning level is entered when the estimated AdBlue range is below 800 km. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on. Additionally, control indicator B  will flash and a chime will sound. Refill AdBlue before entering the next warning level.
3. The next warning level is entered with a range below 100 km. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on.




Additionally, control indicator  will flash and a chime will sound. Refill AdBlue as soon as possible before the AdBlue tank is completely empty. Otherwise, a restart of the engine will not be possible.

4. The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue tank is empty. Restart of the engine is not possible. A message appears on the cluster.

Additionally, control indicator  will flash and a chime will sound. Refill the AdBlue tank completely, otherwise restarting of the engine is not possible.

High emission warnings

In the event of a fault with the emissions control system, different messages are displayed on the cluster.

The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement. The warning messages are accompanied by the control indicators ,  and . Additionally, a chime will sound.

Follow the instructions of the warning messages. If starting is prevented, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Refilling AdBlue

Caution

Only use AdBlue® that complies with European standards DIN 70 070 and ISO 22241-1.

Do not use additives.

Do not dilute AdBlue®.

Otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

The AdBlue tank should be filled completely. This must be done if the warning message regarding prevention of an engine restart is already displayed. AdBlue refilling quantity ⇒ page 237.

Note

Whenever a filling pump with a nozzle for passenger cars is not available at a filling station, use only AdBlue bottles or canisters with a sealed refill adapter for refilling, to prevent splashback and overspill, and in order to ensure that the fumes from the AdBlue tank are captured and do not emerge.

Since AdBlue has a limited durability, check the date of expiry before refilling.

Note

Refill the AdBlue tank to a level of at least 10 l, to ensure that the new AdBlue level is being detected.

In case AdBlue refill is not successfully detected:

1. Continuously drive the vehicle for ten minutes making sure that vehicle speed is always higher than 20 km/h.
2. If AdBlue refill is detected successfully, AdBlue supplydriven warnings or limitations will disappear. If AdBlue refill is still not detected, seek the assistance of a workshop.

If AdBlue must be refilled at temperatures below -11 °C, the refilling of AdBlue may not be detected by the system. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue is liquified.

Note

When unscrewing the protective cap from the filler neck, ammonia fumes may emerge. Do not inhale as the fumes have a pungent smell. The fumes are not harmful by inhalation.

The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.

The filler neck for AdBlue is located behind the fuel filler flap.

The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Close all doors to avoid ammonia fumes entering the interior of the vehicle.
3. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap.



4. Unscrew protective cap from the filler neck.
5. Open AdBlue canister.
6. Mount one end of the hose on the canister and screw the other end on the filler neck.
7. Lift the canister until it is empty, or until the flow from the canister has stopped.
8. Place the canister on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 seconds.
9. Unscrew the hose from the filler neck.
10. Mount the protective cap and turn clockwise until it engages.

Note

Dispose of AdBlue canister according to environmental requirements. Hose can

be reused after flushing with clear water before AdBlue dries out.

Fuel

Fuels Compatibility

Fuel for petrol engines



Only use unleaded fuel that complies with European standard EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent.

The engine is capable of running with fuel that contains up to 10% ethanol (e.g. named E10).

Use fuel with the recommended octane rating. A lower octane rating can reduce engine power and torque and slightly increases fuel consumption.

Note

The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Caution

Do not use fuel or fuel additives that contain metallic compounds such as manganese-based additives. This may cause engine damage.

Caution

Use of fuel with a lower octane rating than the lowest possible rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

The engine specific requirements regarding octane rating are given in the engine data overview ⇒ page 232. A country-specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the requirement. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel, e.g. a specific octane rating, may be required to ensure proper engine operation.

Fuel for diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and

future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



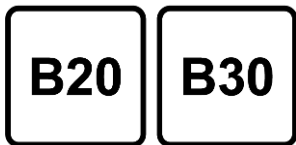
Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engines. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a workshop.

Caution

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

Note

The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Low temperature operation

At temperatures below 0 °C, some diesel products with biodiesel blends may clog, freeze or gel, which may affect the fuel supply system. Starting and engine operation may not work properly. At ambient temperatures below 0 °C, use winter grade diesel fuel.

At temperatures below -15 °C, it is recommended to park the car in a heated garage.

Arctic grade diesel fuel can be used at extremely low temperatures below -20 °C. Using this fuel grade in warm or hot climates is not recommended and may cause engine stalling, poor starting or damage on the fuel injection system.

Refuelling

Danger

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive.

No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

A label with symbols at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed fuel types. In Europe the pump nozzles of the filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

Caution

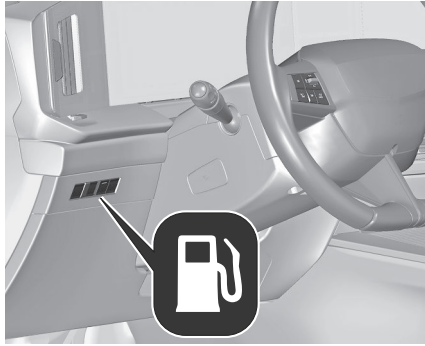
In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.


The fuel filler flap is located at left rear side of vehicle.



The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap.

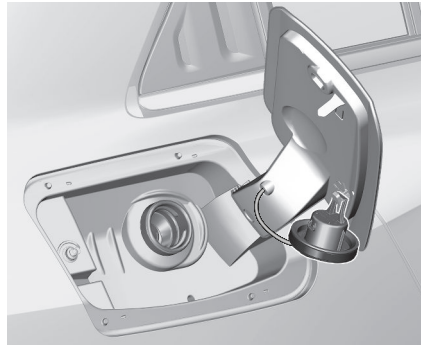
To open the fuel filler flap of a PHEV, a depressurisation phase is required to avoid the emission of fuel vapour. This can take up to one minute.



Press . After depressurisation the fuel filler flap is unlocked and bounces a bit.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

To open, turn the cap slowly anticlockwise.



The fuel filler cap can be attached to the hook on the fuel filler flap.

Place the nozzle in straight position to the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.

To refuel, switch on pump nozzle. After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the pump nozzle a maximum of two more times.

Caution

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until it clicks.

Close the flap and allow it to engage.

Fuel filler cap

Only use genuine fuel filler caps.

Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

Fuel Consumption - CO₂-Emissions

All values are combined values under WLTP condition.

ICE

The fuel consumption is within a range of 6.5 to 4.2 l/100 km.

The CO₂ emission is within a range of 148 to 111 g/km.

PHEV

The fuel consumption is within a range of 1.2 to 1.0 l/100 km.

The CO₂ emission is within a range of 28 to 22 g/km.

Propulsion type ⇒ page 3.

General information

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The determination of fuel consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No. 715/2007 and No.

2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).

The specification of CO₂ emission is also a constituent of the directive.

The figures given must not be taken as a guarantee for the actual fuel consumption of a particular vehicle.

Furthermore, fuel consumption is dependent on personal driving style as well as road and traffic conditions.

All values are based on the EU base model with standard equipment.

The calculation of fuel consumption takes into account the vehicle's kerb weight, ascertained in accordance with the regulations. Optional equipment may result in slightly higher fuel consumption and CO₂ emission levels and a lower maximum speed.

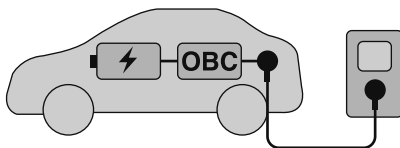
Charging

General Information

Warning

Persons with a pacemaker or similar devices should consult a doctor for possible precautions.
If in doubt, during charging do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit.

Charging the vehicle's high voltage battery depends upon several factors:



- high voltage battery of the vehicle
- internal onboard charger (OBC)
- charging cable
- external charging device

The charging cable connects the vehicle with an external charging device providing electric power. This may be a domestic electrical outlet, a **Green'Up** socket, a wall box or a public charging station.

The high voltage battery can be charged with direct current (DC) only. When charging from a domestic electrical outlet, a wall box or an alternating current (AC) charging station, AC has to be converted into DC. This is done by the vehicle's onboard charger.

PHEV: The onboard charger (singlephase) is available with 3.7 kW or 7.4 kW.

BEV: The onboard charger (3-phase) is available with 11 kW.

Propulsion types ⇒ page 3.

The speed of charging the vehicle's high voltage battery depends upon the weakest element of the charging chain. To achieve the maximum charging speed, charging cable and charging device have to be attuned to each other.

Note

Make sure that the charging cable used fits to the vehicle's onboard charger.

Charging types ⇒ page 129.

Charging cable ⇒ page 129.

Warning

In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire!
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric power consumption and range

The electric power consumption (combined under WLTP condition) is within a range of 15.0 to 14.0 kWh/ 100 km.

The all electric range is up to 67 km (PHEV Gen 1) / 85 km (PHEV Gen 2) / 454 km (BEV).

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The determination of electric power consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No. 715/2007 and No. 2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).

Charging Types

There are different types of charging the vehicle's high voltage battery.

Charging times refer to charging an empty battery until it is completely charged.

Charging at wall boxes / AC charging stations

A wall box / AC charging station may or may not provide a charging cable which has to be connected to the vehicle's charging port.



PHEV: Charging time takes approx. three hours and 25 minutes with the 3.7 kW onboard charger and 16 A.

For the 7.4 kW onboard charger with 32 A, charging time takes approx. one hour and 40 minutes.

BEV: Charging time takes approx. five hours with the 11 kW onboard charger.

Charging at DC charging stations



Up to approx. 80% of battery capacity may be charged in approx. 30 minutes at a charging power of 100 kW. 30 minutes at a charging power of 150-160 kW depending on the type of HV battery in the vehicle.

Charging at Green'Up outlets

The high voltage battery can be charged at a **Green'Up** outlet.

Connect the charging cable to the vehicle's charging port and to the Green'Up outlet.

PHEV: Charging time takes approx. three hours and 55 minutes.

BEV: Charging time takes approx. 16 hours and 35 minutes.

Charging at domestic electrical outlets



The vehicle's high voltage battery can be charged at a domestic electrical outlet. Connect the charging cable to the vehicle's charging port and to the domestic electrical outlet.

PHEV: Charging time takes approx. seven hours and five minutes.

BEV: Charging time takes approx. 30 hours.

Charging cable

Depending on the charging type, different charging cables are used.

⚠ Warning

Improper use of portable charging cables may cause a fire, electrical shock, or burns, and may result in damage to property, serious injury, or death.

- Do not use extension cables, multi-outlet power strips, splitters, grounding adaptors, surge protectors, or similar devices.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is worn or damaged, or one that will not hold the plug firmly in place.
- Do not immerse the charging cable into any liquid.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is not properly grounded.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is on a circuit with other electrical loads.

⚠ Warning

Read all the safety warnings and instructions before using this product. Failure to follow the warnings and the instructions may result in electric shock, fire, and / or serious injury. Never leave children unattended near the vehicle while the vehicle is charging

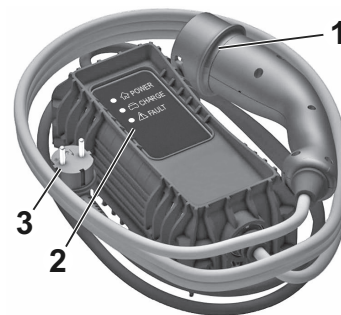
and never allow children to play with the charging cable.

If the plug provided does not fit the electrical outlet, do not modify the plug. Arrange for a qualified electrician to inspect the electrical outlet. Do not put fingers into the electric vehicle connector.

⚠ Danger

There is a risk of electric shock that may cause personal injury or death. Do not use the charging cable if any part of the charging cable is damaged. Do not open or remove the charging cable cover. Service by qualified personnel only. Connect the charging cable to a properly grounded outlet with cables that are not damaged.

Basic domestic cable (mode 2) / enhanced domestic cable (mode 2)



- 1 Vehicle plug
- 2 Status indicators
- 3 Wall plug

Basic domestic cables (mode 2) are used for charging at domestic electrical outlets. A basic domestic cable (mode 2) consists of a vehicle plug, a control box and a plug for the domestic electrical outlet. The control box has an integrated charge controller and several LEDs indicating the charging status. Enhanced domestic cables (mode 2) are similar to basic domestic cables (mode 2). However, the charging performance of enhanced domestic cables (mode 2)

charging) is better than the charging performance of basic domestic cables (mode 2).

Enhanced domestic cables (mode 2) are used at Green'Up sockets which have to be installed by a certified electrician at the customer's site.

Charging cable status indicators

After plugging in the charging cable, it will perform a quick self test and all status indicators illuminate for a moment. For the functions of the status indicators, refer to the manual of the charging cable manufacturer.

Important information about portable electric vehicle charging

- Charging an electric vehicle can stress a building's electrical system more than a typical household appliance.
- Before you plug in to any electrical outlet, have a qualified electrician inspect and verify the electrical system (electrical outlet, wiring, junctions and protection devices) for heavyduty service at a 10 A continuous load.
- Electrical outlets may wear out with normal usage or be damaged over time, making them unsuitable for BEV charging.

- Check the electrical outlet / plug while charging and discontinue use if the electrical outlet / plug is hot, then have the electrical outlet serviced by a qualified electrician.
- When outdoors, plug into an electrical outlet that is weatherproof while in use.
- Mount the charging cable to reduce strain on the electrical outlet / plug.

Mode 3 charging cable



- 1 Vehicle plug
- 2 Plug for wall box / AC charging station

Mode 3 charging cables are used for charging at wall boxes and AC charging stations. A mode 3 charging cable

provides a vehicle plug and a plug for the wall box / AC charging station. Wall boxes / AC charging stations may provide an integrated mode 3 charging cable. For more information on the mode 3 charging cable, refer to the manual of the charging cable manufacturer.

Mode 4 charging cable

Note

Only use DC charging cables shorter than 30 metres.

Mode 4 charging cables are used for DC charging. Since mode 4 charging cables are integrated within DC charging stations, they only provide a vehicle plug.

High Voltage Battery

⚠ Warning

Damage to the high voltage battery or high voltage system can create a risk of electric shock, overheating, or fire. If the vehicle has been damaged or affected by a moderate to severe crash, it must be inspected as soon as possible by qualified personnel. Until the technical inspection has been carried out, the vehicle must be stored outside at a minimum distance of 5 metres from any structure or other flammable objects.

If the vehicle has been damaged or affected by flood or fire, it must not be moved at all and has to be inspected by qualified personnel as soon as possible.

To preserve the range and the durability of the high voltage battery, the following is recommended:

- Whenever possible do not charge the high voltage battery more than 80%.
- Do not completely discharge the high voltage battery.
- Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than twelve hours) when the high voltage battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit the use of fast charging.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30 °C and above 60 °C for more than 24 hours.
- Avoid charging the vehicle at low temperatures (except if the vehicle ran more than 20 minutes) or above 30 °C.
- Do not use the high voltage battery as a generator of energy.
- Do not use a generator to recharge the high voltage battery.

Leakage

Damage to the high voltage battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later. The following is recommended:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, that the vehicle is equipped with a high voltage battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the high voltage battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the high voltage battery which are toxic.
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.
- Too low a coolant level must be topped up and the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Charging

 **Warning**

Persons with a pacemaker or similar devices should consult a doctor for possible precautions.

If in doubt, during charging do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit.

In order to ensure the compatibility of plug and outlet, different labels are used. The labels are located on the inside of the vehicle's charging port flap. Make sure to connect only a cable of the same type.



Type 2 plug or outlet used for AC charging.



FF plug or outlet used for DC charging

 **Warning**

Avoid any entry of fluids into the charging port of the vehicle, the vehicle

plug of the charging cable and the domestic electrical outlet.

When charging at a public AC charging station / public DC charging station, follow the instructions for the use of the respective charging station. Public AC charging stations may not provide an integrated charging cable. In this case, a portable mode 3 charging cable is required.

Warning

When charging at a domestic electrical outlet, only use an outlet which is properly grounded and protected by a 30 mA differential switch.

Only use a domestic electrical outlet protected by a circuit breaker adapted to the amperage of the electrical circuit. Have a qualified electrician check the electrical installation to be used. The installation has to be in compliance with national standards and compatible with the vehicle.

When using a dedicated domestic electrical outlet, have it installed by a qualified electrician.

Make sure that the electrical outlet, the plug and the cable do not support the weight of the control box.

Warning

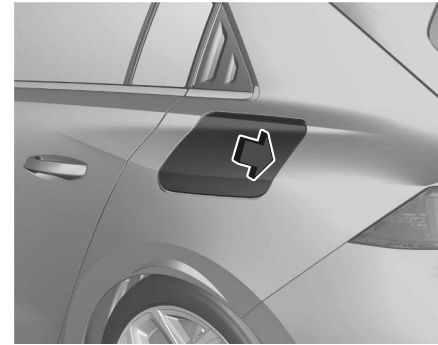
The engine does not start if the charging cable is connected to the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the cluster.

During the charging process, unlocking the vehicle will interrupt charging. If no action is taken on tailgate, the doors or the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically. Do not work in the engine compartment. Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging and the fan may start at any time.

Warning

Make sure that the charging port flap is closed. Do not leave the charging cable connected to the domestic electrical outlet.

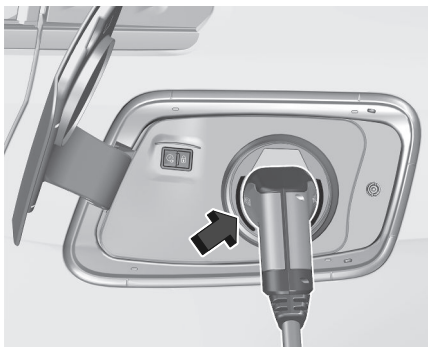
- 1 Shift into **P** and switch off the vehicle.



- 2 Push the charging port flap at the two "features/stripes" on the rear center of the flap.
- 3 If necessary, take the charging cable out of the load compartment.
- 4 If necessary, plug in the plug of the charging cable into the corresponding port of the external power source.
- 5 If necessary, remove the protective cover from the vehicle plug of the charging cable.




- 6 Plug in the vehicle plug of the charging cable into the charging port of the vehicle.



The start of charging is indicated by the green flashing of the status indicator at

the charging port and at the control box of the charging cable if available.





Once charging, the vehicle plug will be locked to the charging port and cannot be disconnected while charging is active.  indicator illuminates.

Cancelling the charging process

Note

At public charging stations, the cancelling and subsequent resuming of the charging process may cause additional costs. Once the charging process has started, only the driver's door can be unlocked without cancelling the charging process. Therefore, activate the driver's door only function in the vehicle personalisation.

Press  on the remote control to cancel the charging process at any time.

Press  twice to cancel the charging process at any time if the function driver's door only is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

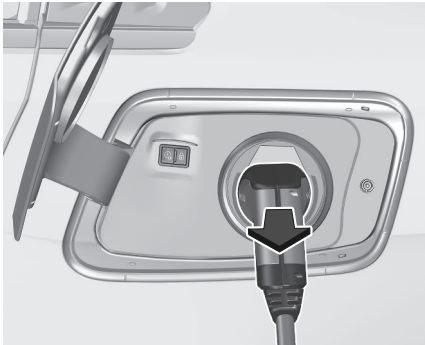
Central locking system ⇒ page 9

Vehicle customization ⇒ page 99

Stop charging

The high voltage battery is fully charged if the status indicator on the charging port permanently illuminates green.

- 1 Unlock the vehicle before removing the vehicle plug from the charging port.
If the vehicle is already unlocked, lock the vehicle and unlock it again.



- 2 Disconnect the vehicle plug of the charging cable from the charging port within 30 seconds after unlocking.
- 3 Close the charging port flap by pressing firmly in the centre to latch properly.
- 4 Disconnect the charging cable from the external power source.
- 5 If necessary, store the charging cable in the load compartment.

While the charging cable is plugged into the vehicle, the vehicle cannot be driven.

Battery Charge limiter

The Battery Charge Limiter function is part of the systems designed to preserve

the battery's integrity and performance for the whole duration of the vehicle's life. This limit is set at **80%** for daily use. If you exceptionally want to change the charging limit, e.g. for longer journeys, you can disable this limit and charge up to 100%.

Note

This limit does not apply for DC fast charging (Mode 4).

Note

Upon delivery of a new vehicle, it is possible that the charge limiter is not activated. Check and activate the limiter if required.

Activation

If the Battery Charge Limit is not enabled, it is possible to manually enable it.



- Open the **Energy App**
- Go to the **Charging Tab**
- Enable the **Charge Limit**.

Note

80% charging limit, when activated, is only applied to modes 2 and 3. Deferred charging is only possible with modes 2 and 3.

Deactivation



- Open the **Energy App**
- Go to the **Charging Tab**
- Disable the **Charge Limit**.

⚠ Warning

It is not recommended to leave the charging limit disabled, it will negatively impact the battery's health over time and reduce overall performance.

Programmable Charging

By default, charging starts as soon as the charging cable is connected to the charging port of the vehicle. It is also possible to schedule charging using the Info Display.

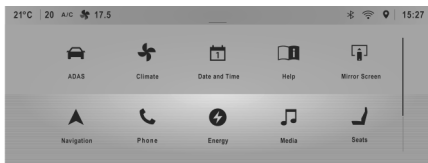
Programmable charging is only possible when charging at a domestic electrical outlet / **Green'Up** socket or a wall box. Programmable charging is also available via the **MyOpel App**.

Note



On vehicles without integrated navigation system, programmable charging can only be used via the **MyOpel App**.



1 Press 



2 Touch 

3 If necessary, touch  and swipe the screen downwards and touch 

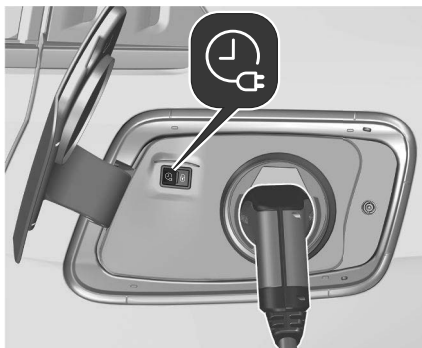
4 Select **Charging**


5 Touch 

6 Define the number of hours and minutes after which the charging process starts

7 Touch OK

8 Plug in the vehicle.



9 Within one minute, press  to activate programmable charging.

10 Depending on version, lock the vehicle.

The status indicator illuminates blue indicating that programmable charging is active.

Charging ⇨ page 128.

Charging status ⇨ page 136.

Charging Status



If the vehicle is plugged in and the ignition is switched off, the charging status indicator indicates the following:

- Illuminates white: welcome lighting when charging port flap is opened
- Illuminates green: charging complete
- Flashes green: charging high voltage battery in process, charging external devices in process
- Illuminates blue: programmable charging active
- Illuminates red: malfunction

A malfunction may be caused by the vehicle or the electrical installation at the customer's site.

Further charging status indicators are located on the control box of the basic domestic cable (mode 2) / enhanced domestic cable (mode 2).

Charging cable ⇒ page 129

Programmable charging ⇒ page 135

Battery Preconditioning

This feature allows you to take advantage of a warmed-up battery in cold conditions, thus reducing the additional charging time during the first charge in DC charging speed (Mode 4) in cold weather conditions, improve battery durability and regen performance.

Battery Preconditioning With Cabin

The following conditions allow battery preconditioning to start, heating up the battery too before driving, in parallel with cabin:

- The car is plugged (mode 2 or mode 3).
- Deactivate Battery Charging Limit 80% function and make sure the battery charge is over 90%.
Battery Charging Limit 80% ⇒ page 135
- The cabin preconditioning is activated/scheduled.
Temperature Preconditioning ⇒ page 137

- Customer benefit: The battery preheating function (Step 1) allows customer to leave home with a warmed-up battery, thus reducing the additional charging time during the first charge in mode 4 in cold weather conditions, improve battery durability and regen performance.

Note

It is recommended to set the function 90 minutes before driving.

Programming

On board the vehicle, simply turn on the car and start to drive. The battery temperature is maintained during thanks to its thermal capacity to allow a good enough temperature for next charging phase. Feature not working during driving phase.

Plug And Charge

Plug&Charge is specific for **BEV** models. This feature enables automatic authentication and payment when the vehicle is connected to a compatible charging station. Functionalities (based on the vehicle model):

- **Automatic payment method for charging events**, the vehicle authorizes

and processes payments without user intervention.

- **Ability for user to enable and disable the feature**, the customer has full control over Plug&Charge settings.
- **Review all charging transactions**, possibility to access detailed charging session history.
- **Onboard & offboard customer experience**, a fully integrated system across in-vehicle displays and external digital platforms ensures a seamless charging journey

Vehicle To Load (V2L)

Vehicle to Load (V2L) is a function that allows the use of the high voltage battery to power or charge external devices as long as the battery is above 30% charge. If the battery reaches 30%, the energy transfer will stop automatically.

The adapter plugs into the charging port of the vehicle and offers a standard 230V / 16A plug for connecting the external device.

Warning

Misuse of the adapter can create a risk of electricshocks or fire.

⚠ Warning

The device is water resistant, however using it in humid weather conditions, can create a risk of damage to the external device. The V2L adapter is not protected against submersion.

Note

Charging external devices via the charging port of the vehicle will lower the charging level of the high voltage battery.

Note

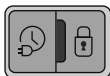
For more information, please refer to the manual supplied with the V2L device.

Activation

- Push the charging port flap to open it.



- Connect the V2L adapter to the charging port.
- Press the button on the adapter.
- When the LED on the adapter is illuminated steady green, connect the adapter and the external device.



is flashing green when the external device is being charged. A dedicated page will be shown on the touchscreen.

Deactivation

- Press the button on the adapter to stop charging the external device.

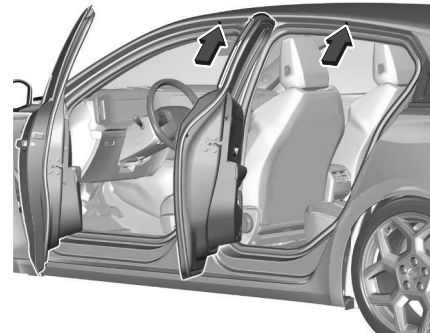
- Disconnect the external device.
- Disconnect the adapter.
- Close the charging port flap by pressing it firmly to latch properly.

Vehicle Loading

Roof Rack System

Roof bars

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, a vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended. For further information, contact your workshop.



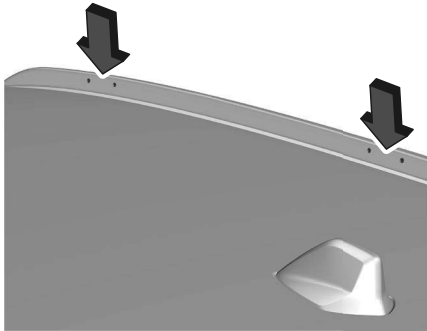
Open all doors. Mounting points are located in each door frame of the vehicle body.

Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions delivered with the roof rack.

Remove the roof rack when not in use.

Sports Tourer

The roof rack can only be installed on vehicles with roof rail.



Markings at the roof rails indicate where the roof rack is to be installed.

Trailer Towing

Towing Device

General information

Caution

For new vehicles, only tow a trailer after having driven at least 1000 km.

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle.

Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment. Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye.

If this is the case, use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle to have it on hand if needed.

Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabiliser, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.

During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h. A maximum speed of 100 km/h is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle's curb weight.

For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended.

If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed.

Trailer loads

Caution

BEV:

Use of towing equipment is permissible for attaching compatible bicycle carriers only.

Do not use towing equipment for trailer towing.

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for gradients up to 12%.

The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 m of altitude. The gross train

weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate ⇒ page 229.

Vertical coupling load

Warning

If attaching accessories to the trailer hitch such as bicycle carriers, tow boxes etc., do comply with the maximum permissible vertical coupling load.

When using a bicycle carrier, do not transport more than four conventional bicycles or two electric bicycles. Make sure to place the heaviest bicycle as close as possible to the vehicle.

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load (70 kg / BEV: 60 kg) is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents.

Always aim for the maximum vertical coupling load, especially in the case of

heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h applies.

Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabiliser, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.

During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h. A maximum speed of 100 km/h is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle's curb weight.

For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended.

If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed.

Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load.

Towing equipment

Caution

When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

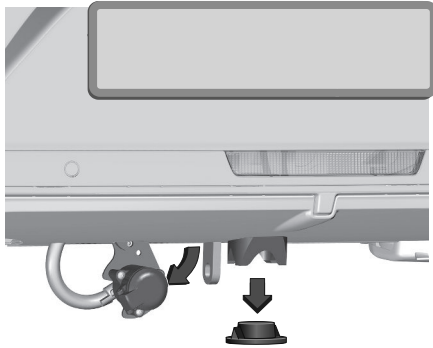
Stowage of coupling ball bar



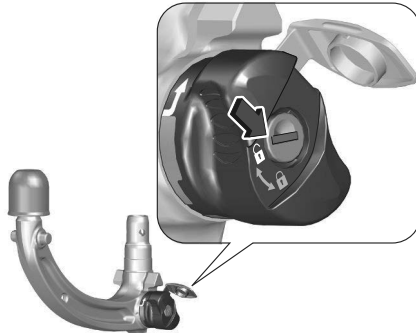
The bag with the coupling ball bar is stowed on the rear floor cover in the load compartment.

Place the strap through the rear right lashing eye, wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

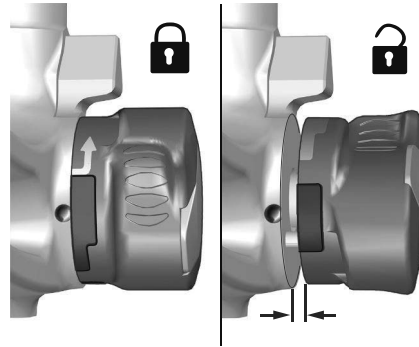
Fitting the coupling ball bar



Disengage and fold down the socket. Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it. Checking the tensioning of the coupling ball bar




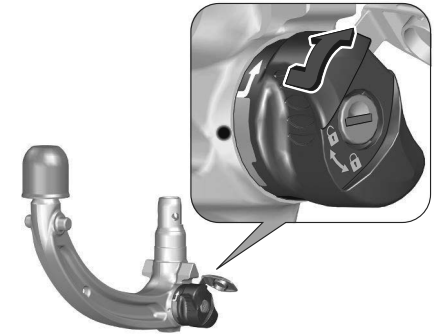
- Remove the protective flap of the lock of the rotary knob and verify whether the rotary knob is unlocked.



- Red marking on rotary knob must point towards white marking on coupling ball bar.
- The gap between the rotary knob and the coupling ball bar must be approx. 5 mm.

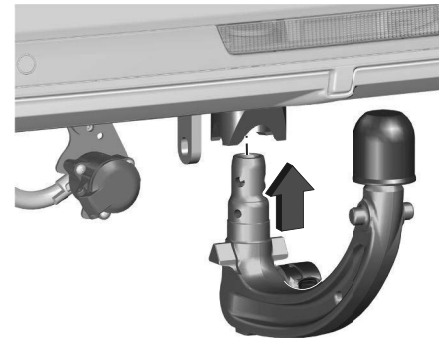
Otherwise, the coupling ball bar must be tensioned before being inserted:

- Unlock coupling ball bar by turning the key to position 



- Pull out the rotary knob and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

Inserting the coupling ball bar




Insert the tensioned coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages.

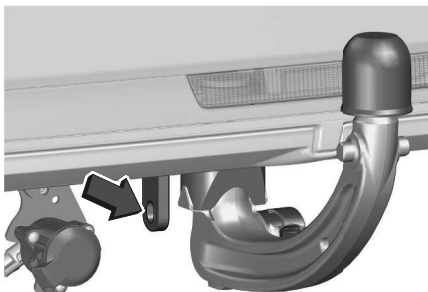
The rotary handle snaps back into its original position resting against the coupling ball bar without a gap.

Warning

Do not touch rotary handle during insertion.

Lock the coupling ball bar by turning the key to position . Remove the key and close the protective flap.

Eye for break-away stopping cable



Attach the breakaway stopping cable to the eye.

Check that the coupling ball bar is correctly installed


- The green marking on the rotary knob must point towards the white marking on the coupling ball bar.
- There must be no gap between the rotary knob and the coupling ball bar.
- The coupling ball bar must be firmly engaged in the opening.
- The coupling ball bar must be locked and the key removed.

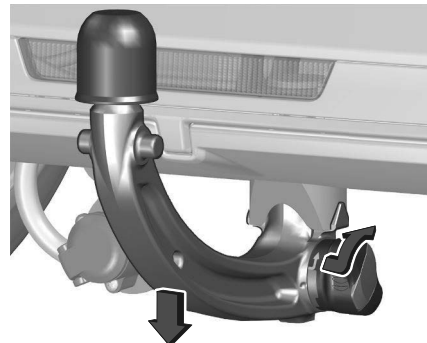
Warning

Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Dismounting the coupling ball bar

Hold the plug of the trailer and disconnect it from the power outlet by performing a a quarter turn and pulling. Disconnect the safety cable of the trailer from the safety eye of the carrier. Remove the trailer from the coupling ball. Put the protective cover over the towing ball.

Open the protective flap of the lock and turn the key to position  to unlock the coupling ball bar.



Pull out the rotary handle and turn clockwise as far as it will go. Pull out the coupling ball bar downwards. Insert the sealing plug in opening. Fold away the socket.

Trailer stability assist

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle / trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible. The system operates from 60 km/h to 160 km/h.

Warning

In some situations, the system may not detect trailer snaking, e.g. when towing a light trailer. On slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

Trailer stability assist is a function of the Electronic Stability Control ⇨ page 163.

Towing Recommendation

Caution

For Hybrid (MHEV) models in high altitude conditions (>2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

Driving Tips

Control Of The Vehicle

Never coast with engine not running

Many systems will not function when the engine is not running, e.g. brake servo unit, power steering. Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

All systems function during an Autostop. Stop-start system ⇨ page 111.

Pedals

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no foot or mats in the area of the pedals.

Use only floor mats, which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side.

Emergencies

Warning

Damage to the high voltage battery or high voltage system can create a risk of electric shock, overheating, or fire.

If the vehicle has been damaged or affected by a moderate to severe crash, it must be inspected as soon as possible by qualified personnel.

Until the technical inspection has been carried out, the vehicle must be stored outside at a minimum distance of 5 metres from any structure or other flammable objects.

If the vehicle has been damaged or affected by flood or fire, it must not be moved at all and has to be inspected by qualified personnel as soon as possible.

Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS)

Introduction To Assistance Systems.....	144
General Information.....	144
Speed Control Assistance System...	146
Speed Limiter	146
Cruise Control	148
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	150
Collision Avoidance Assistance System.....	156
Active Emergency Braking (AEB)	156
Forward Collision Warning (FCW)	160
Post Collision Braking System (PCBS)	162
Vehicle Stability Assistance System.....	162
Anti-Slip Regulator (ASR)	162
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	163
Braking Performance Assistance System.....	163
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	163
Visibility Enhancement Assistance System.....	164
Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA)	164
Lane Assistance System.....	166
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)	166

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)	168
Lane Positioning Assist (LPA)	169
Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System.....	171
Automatic Park Assist	171
Surround Vision	174
Rear Cross Traffic Alert	177
Rear Vision Camera (RVC)	178
Driver's Attention Assistance System.....	180
Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD).....	180
Driver drowsiness and distraction detection with driver monitoring camera.....	182
Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System.....	183
Hill Start Assist	183
Utility Assistance Features.....	183
Traffic Sign Assist (TSA)	183
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)	186

Introduction To Assistance Systems

General Information

Warning

Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention. The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle. When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

Note

To comply with the European general safety regulations, some driver assistance systems can only be deactivated on the Infotainment Display until the next time the ignition is reactivated.

The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

BEV

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention.

Note

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.

It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.

These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

Note

Driving aids. You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

Note

Manoeuvring aids. The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Information displayed Legal Obligations

In order to comply with European regulations and for safety reasons, these functions cannot be partially or totally deactivated by the driver:

- Speed Limit Information in the Road signs recognition system
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert
- Lane keeping assist
- Driver Attention Warning by Camera
- Parking sensors

 **Warning**

The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow), by the masking of the detection zone with adhesive labels or other objects, or if the bumpers are damaged.

If the front or rear bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).

Take care not to cover the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects;

they may hamper correct operation of the associated system.

 **Warning****Driving aids camera**

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windshield area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.

In humid and cold weather, demist the windshield regularly.

Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.

In the event of a windshield replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Note

Other cameras. The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen

or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.

In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast. Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Warning

Sensors

The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.

When reverse gear is engaged, an audio signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.

The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).

Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.

Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Note

Maintenance. Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.

When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

Warning

Mats/Pedal trims

The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

Note

Units of speed

Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.

If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.

In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Speed Control Assistance System


Speed Limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle from exceeding a preset maximum speed. The maximum speed can be set at speeds between 30 km/h and 180 km/h.

The driver can accelerate the vehicle up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill. The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly. The status and preset speed limit are displayed on the cluster.



Activation of the functionality




Press  once to activate the Speed Limiter function.

Setting speed by the driver



The preset speed can be changed by moving the toggle to  to increase or  to decrease the speed.

A short press changes speed by 1 km/h, a long press changes speed by 5 km/h. Press + or - to activate.

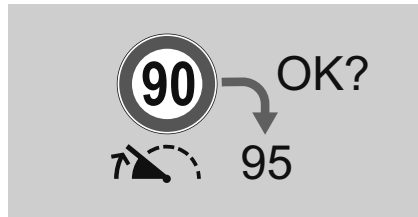
Press  to activate within the same ignition cycle.

Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new set speed for the speed limiter. To detect speed limit signs, the traffic sign assistant has to be activated. Traffic sign assistant → page 183.

When passing the speed limit sign

OK? is automatically displayed.



Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After passing the speed limit sign

Press **OK** on the steering wheel. **OK?** is displayed. Press **OK** to store the suggested speed. The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding the speed limit

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly to the final point. In this case, the preset speed value flashes.

Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

When exceeding the preset speed is not caused by depressing the accelerator pedal, e.g., when driving down a steep slope, an audible signal is given.

Warning

On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting. If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle's speed.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press **II ▷**, speed limiter is in pause mode and a message is displayed. The vehicle is driven without speed limiter.

Speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

Resume limit speed

Press **II ▷**, the stored speed limit will be obtained.

Switching off the system

Press **LIMIT**, the speed limiter mode is deselected and the speed limiter screen is hidden from the cluster.

Fault

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals. In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have the system checked by a STELLANTIS workshop.

Cruise Control

The cruise control can store and maintain speeds above 40 km/h.

For vehicles with manual transmission, any gear has to be selected. For vehicles with automatic transmission, position **D** or the second or a higher gear in position **M** must be selected.

Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill. The system maintains the vehicle speed at the preset speed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal. The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly.

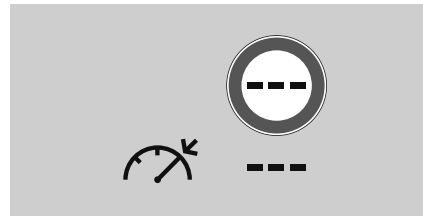
The status and preset speed is displayed on the cluster.

Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.


Switching on the system



Press  ASSIST.




The cruise control screen is displayed.


 is grey indicating that the system is still not active.


Activation of the functionality


If all operating conditions are met, **OK?** is displayed.

Press **OK** to store the current vehicle speed as speed setting and activate the

cruise control.  changes from grey to green indicating that system is active. The accelerator pedal can be released.

Alternatively, move the toggle to  to

increase or  to decrease the speed and store this speed as speed setting. Cruise control is immediately activated if the toggle is moved upwards or

downwards.  changes from grey to green.

Setting speed by the driver



If the system is active, the preset speed can be changed by moving the toggle

to to increase or to decrease the speed. Move the toggle repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new set speed for the cruise control. To detect speed limit sign, the traffic sign assistant has to be activated.

Traffic sign assistant ⇨ page 183.

When passing the speed limit sign

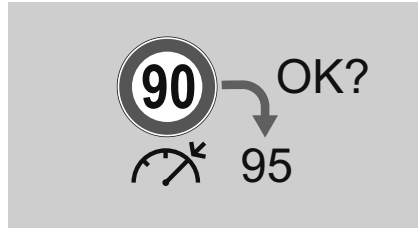
OK? is automatically displayed.

Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After passing the speed limit sign

Press **OK** on the steering wheel.



OK? is displayed

Press **OK** to store the suggested speed. The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding the set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the stored speed.

While the set speed is exceeded, the set speed setting flashes.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press cruise control is in pause mode and a message is displayed. The vehicle is driven without cruise control.

Cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. The last memorized speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

Cruise control is deactivated automatically when:

- The brake pedal is depressed
- traction control system or electronic stability control is operating
- reverse gear engaged, **N** selected or no gear engaged
- clutch pedal depressed for more than five seconds
- electric parking brake engaged

Resume stored speed

Press

Switching off the system

Press , the cruise control mode is deselected and the cruise control screen is hidden from the cluster.

System limitations

Never use the system in the following situations:

- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.

- In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
- Driving on a speed circuit.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using snow chains, nonslip covers or studded tires.

When driving down a steep hill, the system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary.

When driving up a steep hill or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

Fault

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

In the event of a cruise control fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have the system checked by a workshop.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The adaptive cruise control is an enhancement of the cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a certain following distance to the vehicle ahead.



It uses a camera located at the top of the windshield and a radar unit located in the front bumper to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control behaves like a conventional cruise control.

The adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle ahead, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.

If the vehicle ahead accelerates or changes lane, the adaptive cruise control progressively accelerates the vehicle to return to the stored set speed. If the driver operates the turn lights to overtake a slower vehicle, the adaptive cruise control allows the vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle ahead to help passing it.


However, the set speed will never be exceeded.

If the vehicle ahead is moving too slowly and the selected following distance cannot be maintained anymore, a warning chime is given and a message is displayed. The message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle. On vehicles with manual transmission, the system can brake the vehicle until 30 km/h. On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system can brake the vehicle until a full stop. Depending on version, the system can automatically accelerate the vehicle after a full stop.


⚠ Warning

The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down by active emergency braking.
If the brake lights fail, the system does not operate.

Switching on the system

Press  and make sure the **Drive Assist** is activated in the Info Display.



Press  successively until the adaptive cruise control mode is selected.
The adaptive cruise control screen is displayed. The system is still not activated.

Operation conditions

The system can be activated if the following conditions are met:



- vehicle speed between 30 km/h and 180 km/h for vehicles with manual transmission, between 0 km/h and 180 km/h for vehicles with automatic transmission
- driver's door closed
- driver's seat belt fastened
- D selected or second or higher gear engaged
- parking brake released
- brake pedal depressed if vehicle stationary

Activation of the functionality

If all operating conditions are met, **OK?** is displayed.



Press **OK** to store the current vehicle speed and activate the cruise control. On the adaptive cruise control screen, the set speed and a road element are displayed in green. The accelerator pedal can be released.

Alternatively, move the toggle to  to increase or  to decrease the speed and store this speed. The cruise control is immediately activated if the toggle is moved upwards or downwards. On the adaptive cruise control screen, the set speed and the road element are displayed in green.

Setting speed by the driver



The set speed can be changed by moving the toggle to to increase or to decrease the speed. Move the toggle repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new value for the adaptive cruise control.

When passing the speed limit sign

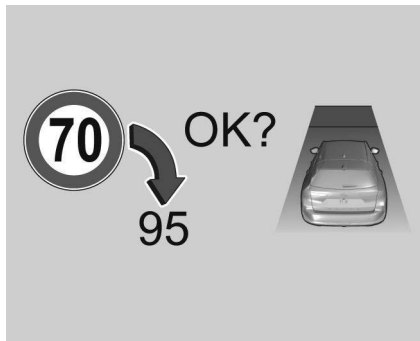
OK? is automatically displayed.

Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After passing the speed limit sign

Press **OK** on the steering wheel.



OK? is displayed Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Traffic sign assistant ⇨ page 183.

Exceeding the set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the stored speed. If a slower moving vehicle is ahead, the following distance selected by the driver is restored.

While the set speed is exceeded, the set speed flashes on the adaptive cruise control screen.

Warning

Accelerating by the driver deactivates automatic braking by the system. This is indicated as a pop-up warning in the cluster.

Resuming stored speed

Press or **OK** to reactivate the adaptive cruise control at the stored speed.

Adaptive cruise control on vehicles with automatic transmission

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the adaptive cruise control allows to maintain the selected distance behind a braking vehicle until a complete stop is reached.

If the system has stopped your vehicle behind another vehicle, the green control

indicator is displayed to the left of the set speed setting. This symbol notifies, that the vehicle is hold automatically in stop position.

While the vehicle is hold in stop position, the following recommendations should be followed:

- Do not leave the vehicle.
- Do not open the load compartment.

- Do not engage the reverse gear.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.

Within three seconds after the vehicle has been stopped by the system, the vehicle slowly moves again if traffic allows it. After three seconds of standstill,

press (A) or depress the accelerator pedal to drive away. Pay attention to the surroundings of the vehicle when driving away.

If the vehicle stays stopped for more than five minutes without any action of the driver, the electric parking brake is applied. Control indicator (P) will illuminate. To release electric parking brake, press the accelerator pedal. Electric parking brake ⇨ page 113.

⚠ Warning

When the system is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Be always prepared to manually apply the brake to hold the vehicle stationary. Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by adaptive cruise control. Always move the selector command to park position (P) and switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

Setting the following distance

When the adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.

The following distance can be set to close (1 bar), normal (2 bars) or far (3 bars).

If the engine is running and the adaptive cruise control is switched on (grey) or active (green), you can modify the following distance setting:



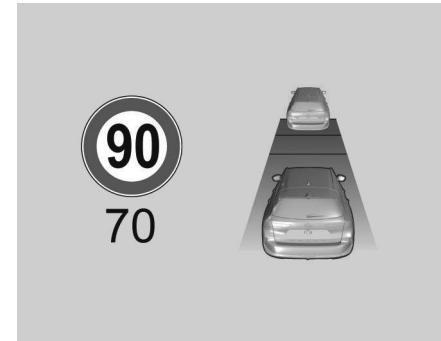
Press the button to display the current following distance setting on the cluster. Press the button successively to select the required following distance setting. The selected following distance is indicated by full bars on the adaptive cruise control screen.

⚠ Warning

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.

Following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off when required by the prevailing conditions.

Detecting the vehicle ahead



If the system detects a vehicle in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control screen changes accordingly.

Deactivation of the functionality


Press **|| ▷**.

The adaptive cruise control is deactivated, but not disabled. The last stored set speed remains in memory for later usage.

The adaptive cruise control is deactivated automatically in the following cases:

- brake pedal depressed
- traction control system or electronic stability control is operating
- reverse gear engaged, **N** selected or no gear engaged
- speed falls below 30 km/h for a vehicle with manual transmission
- risk of engine stalling in case of a vehicle with manual transmission
- clutch pedal depressed for more than ten seconds
- electric parking brake engaged
- seat belt unfastened
- driver's door opened

Switching off the system

Press  successively until the desired mode to switch off assistance is selected.

Driver's attention

- Use the adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads,

as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.

- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tire traction (wheel spinning), so that you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not use the adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.
- Do not use the system when the spare wheel is in use.

System limits

Warning

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking and the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

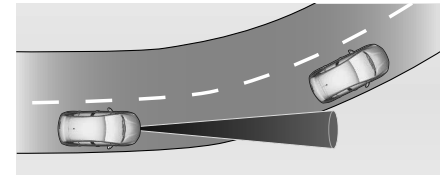
- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. So if a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.

- The adaptive cruise control only considers traffic driving in the same direction.
- The adaptive cruise control does not consider pedestrians, cyclists and animals for braking and driving off.
- The adaptive cruise control does not consider stationary vehicles.

As the radar's field of detection is quite narrow, it is possible that the system may not detect:

- vehicles of reduced width, e.g. motorcycles, scooters
- vehicles not running in the middle of the lane
- vehicles entering a corner
- vehicles suddenly pulling out

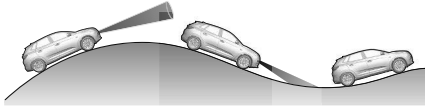
Deactivate the system in the following situations:



- when driving in a tight bend
- when approaching a roundabout

- when following a vehicle not detected by system, e.g., a motorcycle
- when the vehicle ahead sharply decelerates
- when a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead

Hill considerations



Warning

Do not use the adaptive cruise control on steep hill roads.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills. On steep hills, you may have to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your vehicle speed. When going downhill you may have to brake to maintain or reduce your speed. Note that applying the brake deactivates the system.

Radar unit



The radar unit is located in the middle of the front bumper.

Warning

The radar unit was aligned carefully during manufacture. Therefore, in the event of a frontend impact, do not use the system. The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the sensor behind may be affected and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a workshop to verify and adjust the radar unit position.

Warning

The usage of a license plate support on the front bumper may affect the proper radar unit functionality. When using a license plate support, follow the markings and indications on the front bumper.

Fault

In the event of an adaptive cruise control fault, a warning light and a warning message are displayed on the cluster, accompanied by an audible signal.

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

Have the system checked by a STELLANTIS workshop.

As a safety measure, do not use the system if the brake lights are faulty. Do not use the system if the front bumper is damaged.

Collision Avoidance Assistance System

⚠ Warning

Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention. The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle. When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

⚠ Warning

The usage of a license plate support on the front bumper may affect the proper radar unit functionality. When using a license plate support, follow the markings and indications on the front bumper.

Note

To comply with the European general safety regulations, some driver assistance systems can only be deactivated on the Infotainment Display until the next time the ignition is reactivated.

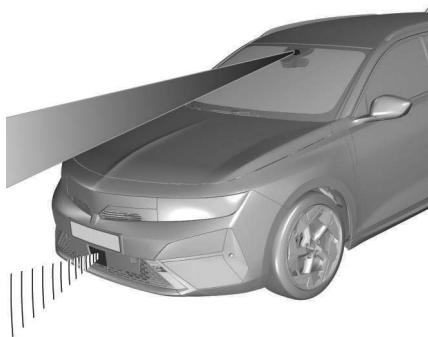
The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

Active Emergency Braking (AEB)

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist directly ahead, when the driver does not actively take action either by manual braking or by steering.

Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver may be warned by the forward collision alert.

The feature uses various inputs (e.g. camera sensor, radar sensor) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.



⚠ Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. It warns the driver if the vehicle is at risk of a collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist. Just before the imminent collision, it reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.

The system may also react on animals. However, animals smaller than 0.5 m or objects on the road may not be detected.

After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.


The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

The driver can override the automatic emergency braking by turning strongly the steering wheel and / or by pressing firmly the gas pedal.

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no food or mats in the area of the pedals.

Activation or Deactivation


Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time

the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle. The system can be activated or deactivated on the Info Display via the vehicle settings .

Information Display ⇒ page 94.

Depending on version, deactivation is only possible at a standstill.

Forward collision warning (FCW) ⇒ page 160.

If deactivated,  illuminates and a message is shown in the cluster.

Functionality

Depending on the vehicle configuration and the detected objects, there are several operational speed ranges.

Active emergency braking operates up to 80 km/h when a pedestrian or a cyclist has been detected.

On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera, the active emergency braking operates up to 80 km/h when a stationary vehicle or a motorcyclist has been detected.

On vehicles equipped only with front camera, the active emergency braking operates from 8 km/h to 85 km/h when a moving vehicle has been detected.

On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera, the active emergency braking operates from 8 km/h to 140

km/h when a moving vehicle has been detected.

The system includes the following functions:

- forward collision warning
- emergency brake assist
- automatic braking

Forward collision warning ⇒ page 160.

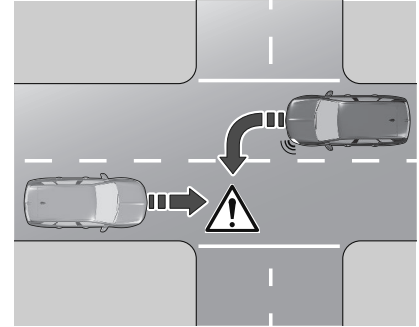
Turning manoeuvre

The system may also operate during a turning manoeuvre when detecting another vehicle, a motorcyclist or a pedestrian.

Crossing road with another vehicle

On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera: The system may operate when the vehicle is turning and detects another vehicle on the adjacent lane, approaching from the opposite

direction, if the following conditions are met:



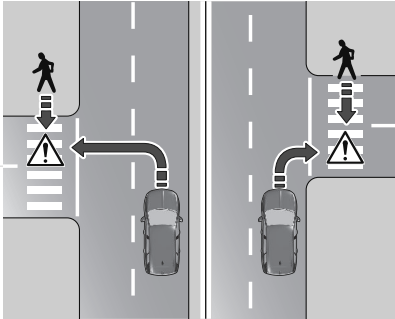
- the corresponding turn light is activated
- the vehicle is about to cross the driving path of another vehicle
- the vehicle speed is between 8 km/h and 25 km/h
- a collision with another vehicle is probable

In addition, the system also reacts on motorcyclists.

Crossing road with a pedestrian

The system may operate when the vehicle is turning left or right and detects

a crossing pedestrian, if the following conditions are met:



- the pedestrian is crossing in front of the vehicle
- the pedestrian can clearly be detected by the sensors
- the scenery is detectable by the sensors, e.g. brightness, contrast versus background

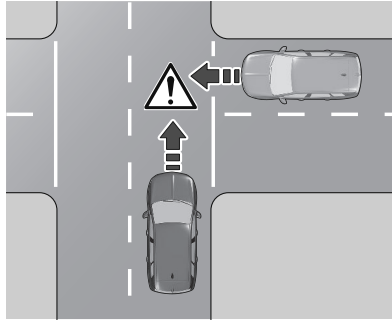
The vehicle speed is between 8 km/h and 25 km/h

In addition, the system also reacts on cyclists.

Crossing manoeuvre

Vehicle crossing the path

The system may operate when a visible vehicle is crossing your path, if the following conditions are met:



- the visible vehicle is crossing your path and can clearly be detected by the sensors
- the speed of the crossing vehicle is below 65 km/h
- the vehicle's speed is below 65 km/h

Automatic braking

Just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash.

If active emergency braking is applied, (⊖) flashes on the cluster.

If active emergency braking is finished, (⊖) flashes for a few seconds.

During this time, active emergency braking cannot be applied if there is a risk of a further collision.

Below a speed of 50 km/h, emergency automatic braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop. If the speed exceeds this limit, automatic braking reduces the speed. However, the driver must apply the brake to come to a complete stop.

If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for a certain time.

Keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

Cruise control will be deactivated when an automatic braking occurs.

In some cases, the driver may wish to override the automatic braking provided by the active emergency braking system. Firmly apply the accelerator pedal or firmly turn the steering wheel to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

 **Warning**

Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle. Active emergency braking will not brake automatically outside of its operating speed range.

Emergency brake assist

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking. This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Emergency brake assist will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released.

Operation conditions

Active emergency braking only works when:

- the brake system is operational
- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control are activated
- the seat belts of the front seats and depending on version of the rear seats are fastened
- constant speed on unwinding roads

Active emergency braking is automatically deactivated in the following cases:

- a spare wheel with smaller diameter is detected
- a fault with the brake pedal switch or with the left or right brake light is detected
- a fault in the active emergency braking system, in the electronic or in the brake system is detected
- a severe crash, e.g., with airbag deployment was detected

System limitations

The system performance may be degraded or not available in the following cases:

- sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt
- windshield damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- damaged or deformed front bumper or front bumper covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper

- front camera out of its regular position
- automatic braking not available, e.g. brake discs cooling going on
- brake pedal continuously used for a long time, e.g. on a long downhill road
- winding or hilly roads
- system initialization process after battery disconnection
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle ahead creating road spray

After an impact or when damages are visible have the vehicle checked by a STELLANTIS workshop.

The system performance may be affected by:

- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control in progress
- vehicle battery voltage out of range
- wet road reflecting lights
- close vehicles ahead
- tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer

- banked roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- vehicle overloaded

The driver must not overload neither the load compartment nor the roof of the vehicle.

If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the camera sensors have to be cleaned. If the system is temporarily affected and no driver action is required, no message is displayed.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and be ready to take action to avoid crashes.


We recommend to deactivate the system in the vehicle personalization in the following cases:


- when towing a trailer or caravan
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack
- when the vehicle is being towed
- when performing any maintenance with ignition on
- when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains



- when a spare wheel is fitted that is smaller than the other wheels
- before using an automatic car wash
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop
- if the windshield has been damaged close to the camera
- if the front bumper has been damaged or deformed
- if the radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact on the front bumper
- if the brake lights are not working

Fault


If the system does not work properly or is not available, e.g. during the initialisation,



 illuminates on the cluster.

If the system has a fault,  illuminates on the cluster, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a STELLANTIS workshop.

 illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the sensors or the camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if these needs to be cleaned. If  still

illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a STELLANTIS workshop.

 may also illuminate if the Info Display system has an issue.

If  and  illuminate on the cluster after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, consult a STELLANTIS workshop.

Vehicle messages ⇒ page 94.

Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

The forward collision warning alerts the driver if there is a risk of collision with the vehicle ahead, with a cyclist or a pedestrian.

Warning

Forward collision warning is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, there may not be enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The

driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

Activation

Depending on the vehicle configuration and the detected objects, there are several operational speed ranges. Forward collision warning operates up to 80 km/h when a pedestrian or a cyclist has been detected. Forward collision warning operates from 8 km/h up to vehicle maximum speed when a vehicle has been detected.

Alerting the driver

The driver is warned by following alerts:

- Level 1: A warning message is displayed in the cluster, when the distance to the vehicle ahead gets too small.
- Level 2: A warning message is displayed in the cluster and a warning chime sounds, when a collision is imminent and immediate driver's action is required.
- Level 3: Depending on version, the vehicle may produce a short brake jerk to confirm the risk of collision. The immediate driver's action is required.

Warning

When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, a level 2 alert may be displayed without a level 1 alert before. Level 1 alerts depend on the alert sensitivity set. This alert type is only displayed in case of moving vehicles. At lower speed it is disabled.

Warning

The colour lighting of this symbol does not correspond to local traffic laws on following distance. The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions etc. at all times.

Selecting the alert sensitivity


Note

If the alert sensitivity setting with the longest distance is set, the system warns earlier. This increases the safety, but increases the amount of alerts if the legal safety distance is not kept. To reduce the number of alerts, select a shorter alert sensitivity setting.

Three alert sensitivities can be selected in the driver assistance systems menu.

The chosen setting will be memorized when the ignition has been switched off. The alert sensitivity will vary based on selected alert setting.

Deactivation

The system can only be deactivated by deactivating the active emergency braking in the vehicle settings  on the Info Display.

Touch screen and Info Display ⇒ page 94.

System limitations

Forward collision warning is designed to warn on vehicles, cyclists and pedestrians, but may react also to other objects.

The system performance may be degraded or not available in the following cases:

- driving on winding or hilly roads
- driving during nighttime
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the sensor in the windshield is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt etc.
- the windshield is damaged or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers

Post Collision Braking System (PCBS)

If an accident is detected, the vehicle requests automatic post collision braking. The goal of this function is to reduce the risk of further collisions if the driver does not react. The system operates on frontal, lateral and rear collision. The automatic post collision braking is not operational if the capability of the vehicle to trigger and execute the automatic post collision braking is unavailable, as it can occur in destructive accidents or in other specific accident scenarios.



It is possible to override the automatic braking by pressing the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

System limitations

The system operates if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- airbags or seat belt pretensioners have been deployed by the collision
- braking system and electric functions remain continuously operational during and after collision
- driver has not depressed brake pedal or accelerator pedal

Fault

If automatic post collision braking is not available, the control indicator  or  illuminates continuously, a corresponding message appears on the cluster and a warning chime sounds.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a STELLANTIS workshop.


Vehicle Stability Assistance System

Anti-Slip Regulator (ASR)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.

If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning lamp  flashing on the instrument panel).

Warning

ASR/DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.


Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tires and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by dealers.

In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tires is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tires approved for your vehicle.

All tire specifications are listed on the tire/paint label. For more information

on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Fault

In the event of a fault, this warning lamp  lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Seek the assistance of a STELLANTIS workshop.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip.


As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer / oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.


ESC operates in combination with the traction control system. It prevents the driven wheels from spinning.

The traction control system is a component of the ESC.

The traction control system improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip, by preventing the driven wheels from spinning.

As soon as the driven wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

ESC and traction control system are operational after each engine start as soon as  extinguishes.


When ESC and traction control system operate,  flashes.

After reconnecting the vehicle battery, the system needs a recalibration by driving a short distance.

Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.
Adapt speed to the road conditions.


Control indicator ⇨ page 77.

ESC and traction control system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalization in the Info Display, accessing the menu with .


A status message appears in the cluster when ESC and traction control system are deactivated.

ESC and traction control system can be reactivated in the vehicle personalization on the cluster, by applying the brake or in

the case that the vehicle is driven faster than 50 km/h.

 in the cluster extinguishes when ESC and traction control system are reactivated. ESC and traction control system are also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system,  illuminates continuously and a message appears in the cluster. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a STELLANTIS workshop.

Braking Performance Assistance System

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the

braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically depending on the force of deceleration. They are switched off automatically the first time you accelerate.

After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.



Control indicator  ⇒ page 82.

Fault

Warning

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Visibility Enhancement Assistance System

Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA)

The side blind spot alert system detects and warns of vehicles approaching from the rear in neighbouring lanes up to 75 m or of another vehicle in the blind spot of the vehicle.

The system displays a visual alert in each exterior mirror when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

Side blind spot alert uses two radar sensors located in the rear bumper on each side of the vehicle.

Warning

Damage or scratches on the vehicle surface near the radar sensors may affect the performance of the system. This can cause wrong warnings or the loss of warnings. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Warning

Side blind spot alert is only a lane changing aid and does not replace driver vision. Side blind spot alert does not detect:

- vehicles approaching very rapidly
- pedestrians or animals
- non-moving objects, e.g. stationary vehicles, street lights, road signs, etc.

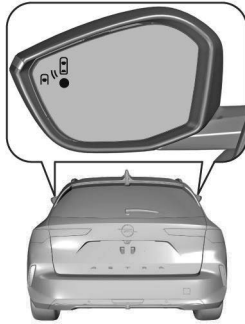
Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in damage to the vehicle, injury, or death. Always check the outside and rearview mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signal before changing lanes.

Activation

When the side blind spot alert is available, e.g. after the engine is switched on, the LEDs in each exterior mirror are activated for approx. three seconds for display.

Info Display ⇒ page 94.

Functionality



When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forwards, an LED will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the turn lights of the relevant side are activated, the LED will flash. The LED comes on immediately when your vehicle is being passed. The LED comes on after a delay when your vehicle is passing another vehicle slowly.

Operation conditions

The following conditions must be fulfilled for proper operation:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes

- passing a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 15 km/h
- no plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch
- the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow
- LEDs in the door mirrors and the rear radars are not covered with stickers or other objects
- the traffic flow is normal
- driving on a straight or slightly curved road

No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects, e.g. parked vehicles, barriers, street lights, road signs
- in very dense traffic, when moving vehicles might be confused with a stationary object
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner
- when passing or being passed by a very long vehicle, e.g. lorry, coach, which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and

present in the driver's forward field of vision


- when passing too quickly

The function will not work properly due to adverse weather conditions such as heavy rain, damage of the surface near the radar sensor or when the sensors are covered with mud / dirt from the road.


Warning

If the rear bumper or front bumper is to be repainted or repaired, contact a workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radars.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalization in the Info Display, accessing the menu with . The state of the system is not memorized when switching off the ignition. The system is switched off automatically when attaching a trailer or bike carrier to the trailer hitch.

Fault

In the event of a fault,  illuminates on the cluster and a message is displayed. Seek the assistance of a STELLANTIS workshop.

Lane Assistance System

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

Warning


The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

Lane keeping assist supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving.

If the vehicle approaches a road edge or a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned so that the vehicle turns back into the lane.

The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

Turn steering wheel in same direction, if the system does not steer sufficiently. Turn steering wheel gently into opposite direction, if lane change is intended. When the system steers to correct the trajectory of the vehicle,  flashes yellow on the cluster. Lane keeping assist does not continuously steer the vehicle. Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.

The system will inform the driver with a message and a chime if there is an ongoing correction for more than ten seconds. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time. When hands-off driving is detected during a correction a warning message appears on the cluster, accompanied by a warning chime. Every further hands-off detection prolongs the warning chime duration.

A lane departure warning on the cluster alerts when the system cannot hold the vehicle within the lane and immediate driver's action is required.

Note

The system might be inactive if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.

For a correct operation of the system, the following preconditions have to be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h and 180 km/h
- the turn lights are not activated
- the electronic stability control is activated and not in operation
- no plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- no temporary spare wheel is used
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present which prevents corrections



Depending on version, only lane departure warning system is active, when a system fault is present, a spare wheel used, Electronic Stability Control is not activated or e.g. a trailer is attached. Deactivate the system when the vehicle is being towed.

Unavailability After Battery Disconnection


Lane Keeping Assist can be temporarily unavailable or inactive when the power supply of the vehicle is reconnected again.

Activation

Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle. For further information see: ⇒ page 82.


If the system is activated,  on the cluster is not illuminated. The system can be activated in the vehicle personalization in the Info Display, accessing the menu with .


Deactivation


The system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalization in the Info Display, accessing the menu with . The state of the system is memorized when switching off the ignition.

Hands-off

When hands-off driving is detected during a correction within a rolling interval of 180 seconds, the system intervenes:

Intervention 1:  flashes until the end of the intervention.

Intervention 2:  flashes and a warning chime sounds until the end of intervention but for at least one second.

Further interventions:  flashes continuously and the warning chime sounds 10 seconds longer than the previous chime.

A lane departure warning on the cluster alerts when the system cannot hold the vehicle within the lane and immediate driver's action is required.

System limitations

Note

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- heavy or unequally distributed loading
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes

- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- wrong tire pressure
- roads with poor lane markings

A warning message may appear when the vehicle is travelling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly.



Deactivate the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.



Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur. The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected. The steering of the system may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure.

The system may not detect handsoff driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather etc). The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving. Using the system on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash.

Fault

If the system has a fault,  and  illuminate in the cluster, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a STELLANTIS workshop.

 illuminates in the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the front camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if the camera needs to be cleaned. If  still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a STELLANTIS workshop.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

Warning

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane


it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

The lane departure warning system supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle crosses a road edge or a lane marking, the system warns the driver.

Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.

No warning will be issued with a dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal or heavy steering.

When the system recognises an unintended lane departure, the control indicator  rapidly flashes yellow.

Operative conditions

For a correct operation of the system, the following preconditions have to be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h and 180 km/h
- the turn lights are not activated
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present which prevents corrections



Deactivate the system when the vehicle is being towed.

Warning


This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Activation

Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle.

If the system is activated,  on the cluster is not illuminated. The system can be activated in the vehicle personalization in the Info Display, accessing the menu with .

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalization in the Info Display, accessing the menu with via the vehicle settings .


System limitations


The system performance may be affected by:



- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires

- roads with poor lane markings

Fault

In the event of a fault,  illuminates in the cluster, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a STELLANTIS workshop.

If a sensor is covered,  illuminates in the cluster and a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.

 illuminates in the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the front camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if the camera needs to be cleaned. If  still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a STELLANTIS workshop.

Lane Positioning Assist (LPA)

Warning

The system assists the driver in managing the steering, acceleration and braking within the limits of the laws of physics and the capabilities of the vehicle.

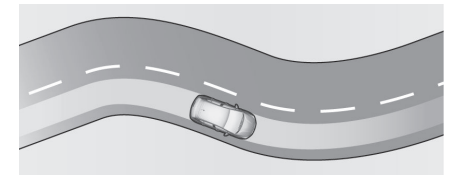
Some road infrastructure elements or vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar,

which may lead to an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of the acceleration or braking.



The activated system observes the lane markings by using the camera located at the top of the windshield.

It steers the vehicle inside the detected lane. The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.




Thus, the current position of the vehicle within the lane is kept.

This position is not necessarily the centre of the lane.


In the case that the vehicle is driving at the outer edge of the lane, the system corrects the trajectory smoothly towards the centre of the currently driven lane when a determined speed has been exceeded.

Again, the driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

When the vehicle is steered by the system,  illuminates green on the cluster. However, the control of the vehicle can be taken over at any time by the driver.

Therefore, the driver needs to apply some additional force when turning the steering wheel.

If the system detects that the driver is not holding the steering wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts.

If the interruption takes too long, the system will be deactivated.  extinguishes on the cluster.


The system has to be reactivated again by the driver. Lane positioning assist operates only in combination with adaptive cruise control.

Required preconditions

- Adaptive cruise control must be activated.
- The driver must hold the steering wheel.
- The turn lights are not activated.
- The Electronic Stability Control is activated and not in operation.
- No plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.
- No dynamic driving is detected, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system.
- No temporary spare wheel is used.
- The vehicle is not driven in a tight corner.
- No system fault is present which prevents corrections.

Activation




Press  successively until the **Drive Assist** mode is selected.

The **Drive Assist** screen is displayed on the cluster.

Info Display ⇨ page 94.

Deactivation

Press  successively until the mode to switch off assistance is selected.

Pausing / suspending the system

Note

When using semi-automated lane change, setting the turn lights starts a semi-automated lane change manoeuvre.

Advanced lane keep assist may be paused or suspended in the following situations:

- The Electronic Stability Control is in operation or it has been deactivated.
- At least one of the lane markings is not detected by the system for several seconds. The system will be reactivated once the operating conditions are regained.
- The driver activates the turn lights and turns the steering wheel.
- Driving outside the lane limits.
- The steering wheel is held too tight or moved too dynamically.
- The brake pedal or the accelerator pedal are applied.
- The adaptive cruise control is paused.
- The road is too narrow or wide.
- The lateral acceleration in curves is too high.

System limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- roads with poor lane markings

A warning message may appear when the vehicle is travelling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly.



Deactivate the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur. The system may not keep the vehicle

in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected. The steering of the system may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure. The system may not detect handsoff driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather etc). The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving. Using the system on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Switch the system off

Fault

If the event of a fault,  and  appear yellow on the cluster, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a STELLANTIS workshop.

Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System

Automatic Park Assist

General information

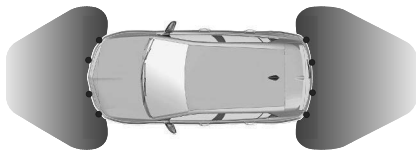
The rear system is deactivated when a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.

⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre. Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

Front-rear parking assist

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving audible signals and display indication.



The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper.

Activation

(Depending on Country)

Press and activate **Close Obstacle Detection**.

When a forward gear has been engaged, the front parking assist is activated, as soon as an obstacle is detected in the front and the speed of the vehicle is below 10 km/h.

When the reverse gear has been engaged, the rear parking assist and the front parking assist are activated.

After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Deactivation

(Depending on Country)

The system is switched off automatically when reverse gear is disengaged or when the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h.

If the vehicle is electrically connected to a trailer, a bicycle carrier etc., the rear assist is automatically deactivated. In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear part of the vehicle in the cluster.

To manually deactivate the system, press and deactivate the system in the Info Display. will illuminate in the cluster.

Indication

As soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle, an audible signal is given and the symbol may flash. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Audible signals are given via front or rear loudspeakers depending on depending on where the closest obstacle is detected.

No audible signals are given:

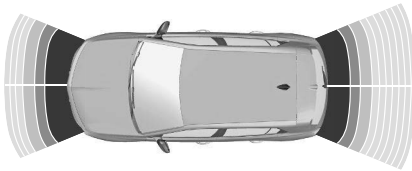
- if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds and if the obstacle is not in the red (closest) zone
- if the automatic transmission is in **P** position
- if no further obstacles are detected

Note

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the rear view camera indicated on the cluster has been switched off.

Additionally, the distance to obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display ⇒ page 94.

When the obstacle is very close, danger is displayed.




Muting the sound / closing the display indication

If the audible signal is muted or the display of the rear view camera is closed and an obstacle gets closer, only the P^{OFF} Δ flashes.

When engaging the forward gear and driving more than 10 km/h the sound and the display are automatically resumed.

System limitations

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors,  and P^{OFF} Δ illuminates in the cluster, a message is displayed and a warning chime sounds.

Note

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted, vertically and horizontally centred and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist will be reduced if the license plate is bent or a license plate support is used.


Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles. Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

Caution

In the case of a severe failure of the vehicle with the need to stop the vehicle, the system is deactivated. In the case of a gearbox failure, the parking assist system is not active, when reverse gear is engaged. In the case of a loudspeaker failure, the audible signals may not be given. Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

If a sensor is covered P^{OFF} Δ , illuminates and a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned. Performance of the parking assist system may be limited or the functionality may not be available at all

if  and P^{OFF} Δ illuminate or if the image shown on the Info Display is frozen or if the screen is black.

Caution

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. offroad vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed. Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle.

During a reverse parking manoeuvre, the system does not consider a

mounted coupling ball bar. The driver has to consider this additional length.

Note

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments (sporadic false warnings may occur).

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist may be reduced if the license plate is bent or a license plate support is used.

Low curbs and surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

Surround Vision

This system allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a full 360° picture in the Info Display, like a bird's eye view.

⚠ Warning

The panoramic view system does not replace driver vision. It will not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other objects

outside of the camera view area, e. g. below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.

Do not drive or park the vehicle using only the panoramic view system. Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving. Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either edge of the bumper or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen.

Depending on the load of the vehicle, the inclination of the vehicle may be changed including the view of the camera.

The system uses:

- rear camera above the rear number plate

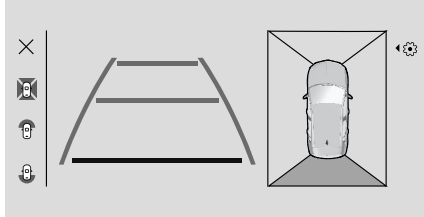


- front camera



- two side cameras in the exterior mirrors
- ultrasonic parking sensors in the bumpers

Visualisation on the Infotainment



The screen is divided into four areas, from left to right:

- selectable views: standard, panoramic front, panoramic rear
- view visualisation
- top view including four selectable side views (in standard view only)
- settings

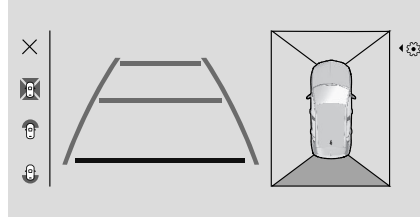
The parking sensors complete the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Activation

The panoramic view system is activated by:

- engaging the reverse gear when the engine is switched on
- manual activation in the Info Display when the vehicle speed is below 16 km/h

Functionality



Different views can be selected in the left part of the display. Change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre by selecting a view from the left side:

- standard view
- panoramic view
- side view

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected. By default, the zoom view is enabled. This setting can be changed in the settings of the panoramic view system in the Info Display.

The state of the system is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Standard view

The standard view consists of a rear view and a front view.

Rear view

The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the steering angle.

The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m.

This view is available in auto mode or can be chosen from the left side of the screen.

Front view

The area in front the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the steering angle.

The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's front bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m.

This view is displayed automatically or can be chosen from the left side of the screen.

Panoramic view

The panoramic view facilitates leaving a parking bay, making it possible to see the

approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.

This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

This view can only be selected from the left side of the screen.

Side view

This view allows to view the surroundings, e.g. a pavement, a low wall, the vehicle parked to the next etc. on the left-hand or right-hand side of the vehicle.


Select the standard view and touch the required side of the vehicle. The selected side is highlighted and the side view is displayed.


Zoom view

The zoom view cannot be selected. It is only displayed if the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than 60-80 cm.

The zoom provides a view from above the rear or the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings. Thus, the vehicle can be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.

The automatic display of the zoom view can be disabled in the Info Display:

Press  below the Info Display and select **Panoramic camera**.

Press .

Activate **View Adaptation**.

The setting is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:

- volume of the audible signal
- brightness
- contrast

Deactivation

Panoramic view system is deactivated when:

- driving faster than 16 km/h in forward gear
- by pressing the icon **X** in the left upper corner of the touch screen

System limitations

Caution

For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lense of the camera, which is located between the number plate lights, always clean. The rear view camera can be cleaned by a washer nozzle which is automatically activated when the rear window washer is operating.

To wipe away water drops from the lense, use a soft cloth.

Do not clean the lense with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

The panoramic view system may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt.
- The vehicle is towing an electrically connected trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- The vehicle had an accident. Contact a workshop.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Warning

It is very important that any repair to the panoramic view system is performed accurately according to Opel specifications. Otherwise, the system may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from the system.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert

Caution

The driver must monitor the surroundings before and during the whole manoeuvre. Drive slowly and carefully in reverse gear in case of reduced or no visibility. It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.


Note

If repainting the rear bumper, consult a qualified workshop since certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar units.

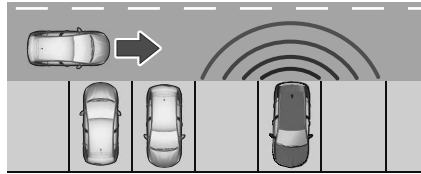
Additional to the side blind spot alert, rear cross traffic alert warns of cross traffic from left or right side when driving rearwards at a speed up to 10 km/h. It warns of approaching objects such as vehicles, trucks, pedestrians, cyclists and motorcycles.

To monitor the area left and right behind the vehicle, the system uses two radar sensors located in the rear bumper on each side of the vehicle.

Activation / deactivation

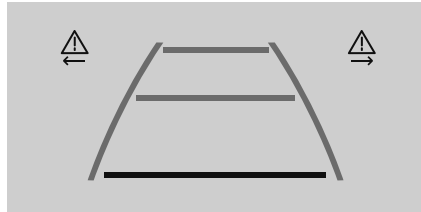
Press  and activate / deactivate the system in the Info Display  page 94.



Detection zone



The system detects obstacles moving at speeds faster than 3 km/h and at a maximum distance of 40 m.

Functionality




If an approaching obstacle is detected while the vehicle is in reverse gear,  or  flashes on the cluster. In addition, an audible signal is given when the vehicle is moving backwards.

System limitations

The system may not operate properly in the following situations:

- towing trailer
- using a bicycle carrier on a towing device
- extreme temperature changes
- the rear bumper damaged
- accumulation or projection of external elements (e.g. mud, ice, snow), application of stickers.

Fault

In the event of a fault,  appears on the cluster, accompanied by a message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a STELLANTIS workshop.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)



The rear view camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle. It allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a nearly 180° picture in the Info Display, like a bird's eye view.

Warning

The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed. Do not reverse or park the vehicle using only the rear view camera.

Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

The system uses:

- rear view camera, mounted above the rear number plate.
- ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

The screen in the Info Display is divided into three parts:

- On the right side, there is a view from above the vehicle.
- The middle part consists of a contextual view.
- The left side consists of the view selection as well as the settings menu.

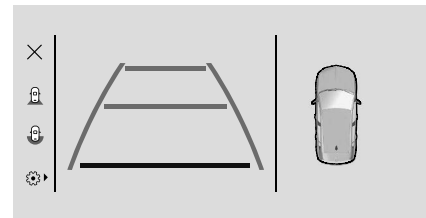
The parking sensors complete the information on the view from above the vehicle.

The area displayed by the rear view camera is limited. Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear. The system automatically selects the best view to display according to the information from the parking sensors. The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Activation

The rear view camera is activated when the reverse gear is engaged. It can also be activated manually in the Driver Assist menu.

Functionality



Different views can be selected in the left part of the display.

Change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre by selecting the required view from the view selection in the left part of the Info Display:

- Standard view
- 180° view

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.

Using the camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during low speed manoeuvres. An image from above the vehicle in its close surroundings is created in real time (on the side of the screen), as the vehicle progresses.

This view makes it easier to align the vehicle when parking and to perceive nearby obstacles. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

Standard view

The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the steering angle.

The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m.

This view is displayed automatically or can be chosen from the view selection. Trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

180° view

The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.


This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.


Zoom view

The rear view camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the

manoeuvre in order to reconstruct a view from above the rear or the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings.

An image from above the vehicle in its close surroundings is created as the vehicle progresses. Thus, the vehicle can be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. Zoom view cannot be manually selected. It is automatically activated if the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is approx. 60-80 cm.

The automatic display of the zoom view can be disabled in the Info Display: Press  below the Info Display and select Panoramic camera.

Press  Activate View Adaptation. The setting is memorized when the ignition is switched off.

Settings menu

The settings menu allows to adjust the following settings:

- volume of the audible signal
- brightness
- contrast

Deactivation

The rear view camera is deactivated when:

- driving faster than 10 km/h in a forward gear

- by pressing the icon X in the left upper corner of the touch screen

System limitations

Caution

For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lense of the camera, which is located between the number plate lights, always clean. The rear view camera can be cleaned by a washer nozzle which is automatically activated when the rear window washer is operating.

To wipe away water drops from the lense, use a soft cloth.

Do not clean the lense with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- surrounding is dark
- sun or beam of headlights is shining directly into camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- camera lenses blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lense using the washer nozzle as described
- the tailgate will be opened

- vehicle is electrically connected to a trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- vehicle had a rear end accident
- extreme temperature changes

Rear window wiper and washer ⇒ page 45.

Driver's Attention Assistance System


Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD)


The driver drowsiness detection system monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver. Monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings.

The system cannot replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. Taking a break is recommended as soon as feeling tired or at least every two hours. Do not drive when feeling tired.

Activation or Deactivation


Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle.

The system can be activated or deactivated on the Info Display via the vehicle settings  ⇒ page 94.

When the system is deactivated  may illuminate on the cluster.

Driving time alert

The driver gets notified by a pop-up

reminder symbol  on the cluster simultaneously with an acoustic alert if the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 65 km/h. The alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped, no matter how vehicle speed evolves.

The counting of driving time alert is reset when the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes or the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened.

Driver Drowsiness Detection

Depending on version the system uses different cameras to monitor the driver's level of vigilance:

- a front view camera outside the vehicle at the top of the windshield
- a driver monitoring camera inside the vehicle on the driver side next to the windshield facing the driver

Warning

To avoid risk of eye damage: Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel.

Driver Drowsiness Detection With Front View Camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 65 km/h. The system may perform a learning procedure for up to 30 minutes after the start of the monitoring. During this period, the driver's individual driving behaviour is analysed and no alert is given. The camera detects variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

If the trajectory of the vehicle suggests a certain level of drowsiness or inattention by the driver, an alert is triggered. In certain driving conditions such as poor road surface or strong winds etc., the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance. The driver drowsiness detection is reinitialised in the following situations:


- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below 65 km/h for a few minutes

- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given. Additionally

 illuminates.

If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. microsleep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a message accompanied by  and a more pronounced audible signal.

Drowsiness and microsleep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

Driver drowsiness and distraction detection with driver monitoring camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 20 km/h.

The system monitors and analyses visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements. The system does not record any video nor is it capable of identifying the driver.

The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking
- microsleep patterns

If the system detects certain facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for a certain time, or analyses a certain level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

Reinitialisation

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialised in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below 65 km/h for a few minutes
- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

System limitations

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:


- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc. dazzle caused by headlamps of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads
- advanced lane keeping assist is active
- front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers


In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:


- driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers


- the driver is wearing sunglasses with an infrared transmittance of less than 70%

Fault

If the system has a fault,  illuminates on the cluster, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a workshop.

 illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if the camera needs to be cleaned.

If  still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a workshop.

 illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the driver's face was not detected by the driver monitoring camera due to e.g. sunglasses.

Driver Drowsiness And Distraction Detection With Driver Monitoring Camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 20 km/h. The system monitors and analyses visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements. The system does not record

any video nor is it capable to identify the driver.

The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking
- micro-sleep patterns


If the system detects certain facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for a certain time, or analyses a certain level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given.

Additionally,  illuminates.

If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. micro-sleep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a

message accompanied by  (red) and a more pronounced audio signal.

Drowsiness and micro-sleep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

Reinitialization

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialised in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below 65 km/h for a few minutes
- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

Activation/deactivation

By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start.



The settings are changed via the **ADAS** menu.

or

Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids**.



Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator light on the instrument panel.

System limitations

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc. dazzle caused by headlights of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads
- advanced lane keeping assist is active
- front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers

- the driver is wearing sunglasses with an infrared transmittance of less than 70%
- the driver monitoring camera is exposed to extremely high temperatures

Fault



Illuminates on the cluster when a fault is detected, accompanied by a message and an audible chime.



Illuminates on the cluster when the audible warning system encounters a fault. Consult a workshop.

Depending on the message, check that :

- The camera lenses are clean.
- The face monitoring camera is not disturbed by the driver wearing sunglasses.

If the fault cannot be cleared, consult a dealer or qualified workshop.

Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System

Hill Start Assist

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, brakes remain on for further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

The system is active if the following conditions are met:

- vehicle stationary
- brake pedal depressed
- driver's door closed

Utility Assistance Features

Traffic Sign Assist (TSA)



The actual traffic sign always takes priority over the traffic sign displayed on the cluster.

Depending on version, two different systems are available.

Intelligent Speed Assistance

Using the camera at the top of the windshield and the vehicle's integrated navigation system, this system detects and reads speed limit signs and end of speed limits on the cluster. Up to two speed limit signs including supplementary signs are displayed on the cluster. If several speed limits are recognised, the vehicle may analyse and display the valid speed limit.

When a traffic sign for a certain area, e.g. city or motorway, is recognised and the vehicle is fitted with integrated navigation, the corresponding speed limit will also be displayed.


If the system is activated but does not detect a speed limit sign, the following sign is displayed:




If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by at least 5 km/h, the speed limit displayed flashes about ten seconds.
Speed limiter ⇒ page 146.

Cruise control ⇒ page 148.
Adaptive cruise control ⇒ page 150.

Activation

The speed limit function of the traffic sign assistant is activated via the **Drive Assist**. Press  below the Info Display and activate **Drive Assist**.




Press  at the steering wheel successively until the Drive Assist mode is selected.

The **Drive Assist** screen is displayed on the cluster ⇒ page 94.

Deactivation



Press  successively until the mode to switch off assistance is selected.

Updating navigation map data

To maintain the performance of the system, the navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals. A navigation map update is available twice per year.

Further information is available in the Info Display system section.

Speed limit system 2 (compliant with the European General Safety Regulation)

This system displays permanently speed limit information on the cluster independent of vehicle speed.

Providing the speed limit information involves the following systems, depending on version:

- camera at the top of the windshield
- vehicle's integrated navigation system
- telematics service


If travelling on a road with no speed restrictions, e.g., on German motorways, the following sign is displayed:




If no speed limit information can be provided, the following sign is displayed:




If a new speed limit is provided, a confirmation chime is given. The confirmation chime can be activated / deactivated on the Information Display ⇨ page 94.



If driving at a speed of at least 20 km/h and exceeding the speed limit, the speed limit displayed on the cluster flashes after some time and an audible signal is given after some time. Time of occurrence varies. Both flashing and audible signal are terminated after a few seconds. Due to legal requirements, the audible signal can only be deactivated until the next time the ignition is switched on. The deactivation can be done via the Info Display or via shortcut 3x  if configured in the vehicle settings.

Vehicle settings ⇨ page 99.

If the audible signal is deactivated,  illuminates for a few seconds.

Fault

If the system has a fault,  illuminates on the cluster, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a STELLANTIS workshop.

 illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if the camera needs to be cleaned. If  still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a STELLANTIS workshop.

Operation conditions

To provide country-specific speed limit information, the vehicle needs to identify the country it is currently in. If a corresponding country list is available in the Info Display, the respective country has to be selected manually. Otherwise, the country is automatically selected. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing.

Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time.

This is not impacted by the privacy settings of Opel Connect.

Note

It is possible to report a permanent speed limit misinformation on our website.

Updating data

To maintain the performance of the system, the vehicle software and the navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals.

A navigation map update is available at least once per year. Further information is available in the Info Display system section.

For vehicle software update consult a workshop.


Other traffic signs

The system detects traffic signs and displays them in specific page of the cluster.



If the entry of a lane is forbidden by the corresponding traffic sign and the vehicle enters the lane in the wrong direction, the traffic sign and a message is displayed on the cluster.

Activation / deactivation

Press  and activate / deactivate the system on the Info Display.

System limitations

Traffic sign assistant may not operate properly when:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Driving with snow chains.
- The area of the windshield, where the front camera is located, is not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- The visibility is limited because of the weather, such as fog, rain, or snow.

- The vehicle ahead is creating road spray.
- Dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Speed limitation is painted on the surface of the road.
- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.
- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged or have been removed.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
- Depending on version, the navigation map data may be outdated.

Caution

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to recognise certain traffic signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system. Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Always adapt speed regarding road, traffic and weather conditions.

The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation. When driving abroad make sure the vehicle uses the speed unit of the respective country. If necessary, select the correct units in the Info Display.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)


This system displays the maximum speed authorized locally on the instrument panel, using:

- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit information from the on-board navigation system's mapping.
- Speed limit information from the connected services.
- Signs indicating a shared traffic zone detected by the camera.
- Some supplementary traffic signs detected by the camera.


Supplementary traffic sign detected **Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign**

Speed limit when raining If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor):
110 km/h (for example)

Examples:




Speed limit when towing If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle:
90 km/h (for example)




Speed limit applicable over a certain distance 70 km/h (for example)

Example:




Supplementary traffic sign detected **Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign**

Speed limit for vehicles with a gross vehicle weight or gross train weight less than 3.5 tonnes 90 km/h (for example)




Speed limit in case of snow If the outside temperature is below 3°C: 30 km/h (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol

Example:



Speed limit at certain times of the day 30 km/h (for example) with a "clock" symbol

Example:



Note
To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately

deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the connected services.

 **Warning**

On-board navigation mapping should be regularly updated in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

 **Warning**

The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit. For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in. Country selection is only available for audio systems without on-board navigation.

 **Warning**

Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.

The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.

The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Note

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed. The display of the speed limit on the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Information displayed on the instrument panel



1. End of speed limit indication

or

2. Detected speed limit indication



The system is active but is not able to detect the speed sign or the speed limit information is currently unknown.



On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value, accompanied by an audio signal.

Note

The audio signal can be deactivated in the ADAS menu.



For a suggested maximum speed, when the vehicle exceeds it, the speed is displayed and flashes for 3 seconds.



If the vehicle continues to exceed it, the speed is displayed and flashes for 8 seconds, accompanied by an audio signal.

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:

- Atmospheric pollution.
- Towing.
- Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
- Tire repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
- Young drivers.


The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:

- Non-standard traffic signs.
- Traffic signs that are obstructed, damaged or bent.


Activation/deactivation

Overspeed alert

By default, the overspeed alert sound is automatically activated at every engine start.

 The overspeed alert can be deactivated via the ADAS touchscreen application or by long-pressing ADAS physical button. or


Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids**.

 In the event of the overspeed alert sound deactivation, this warning light lights up a few seconds on the instrument panel.


Speed limit change


Note

The speed limit change sound is saved when the ignition is switched off.

 The speed limit change sound can be activated via the ADAS touchscreen application.

Malfunction

 In the event of a malfunction, this warning light lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

 This warning light lights up on the instrument panel with the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked. This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud,

sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.

The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Extended traffic sign recognition



This additional system recognizes these traffic signs and displays them on the instrument panel.

As you approach it, the symbol of the corresponding sign is displayed on the instrument panel.

The selected display mode must be **"Driving"**.

Warning

The actual traffic signs always take priority over those displayed by the system.

The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on traffic signs.

The signs may differ depending on the configuration of the vehicle.

In Case Of Emergency

Hazard Warning Lights.....	190
Activating Hazard Warning Lights	190
Automatic Hazard Warning Lights.....	190
Assist and SOS	190
Emergency Call (eCall)	190
Assistance Call	191
Warning Triangle.....	192
Warning Triangle Kit	192
Assembling The Warning Triangle.....	192
Placing The Triangle.....	192
Tire Repair Kit.....	197
Tire Repair Toolkit	197
Tire Repair Procedure.....	198
Checking-Adjusting Tire Pressure.....	200
Jump Starting	201
Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery.....	201
Charging Another Vehicle.....	202
After Being Recharged - Restarted.....	202
Towing.....	203
Towing The Vehicle	203
Towing Another Vehicle	204

Hazard Warning Lights

Activating Hazard Warning Lights



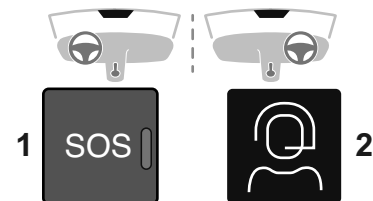
- Pressing this button causes all the direction indicators to flash.

They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic Hazard Warning Lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lights illuminate automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate. They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Assist and SOS



- (1) eCall (SOS)
- (2) ASSISTANCE

Privacy mode can be configured in the Settings menu on the touch screen

Emergency Call (ECall)

Note

In order to be available and operational, the system requires functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GPS satellite link. Depending on equipment, a backup battery is used.

Note

The service is only available for markets where it is legally required.

Furthermore, it depends on the availability of the emergency centres and the infrastructure in the country. The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP). A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.

Status LED in the overhead console

Illuminates green and red and extinguishes after a short time, when the ignition is switched on: the system works properly.

Illuminates red: fault in the system. Contact a workshop.

Flashes red: backup battery needs replacement. Contact a workshop.

Manual emergency call

In case of an emergency, press the red SOS button (1) in the overhead console for more than two seconds.

The LED flashes green to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active.

Pressing the SOS button immediately a second time will terminate the call.

The LED switches off.

Automatic Emergency Call (eCall)

Automatic crash notification

In case of an accident with airbag deployment and without damage of needed hardware, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next PSAP.

Assistance Call

Opel Connect comprises multiple connected services accessible via app, online or within the vehicle.

Note

Opel Connect is not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.


Note

Full functionality of Opel Connect is subject to registration and proper activation.

Connected services may include live navigation such as online traffic information and vehicle status and information such as maintenance alerts. Services accessible within the vehicle also include emergency call and breakdown call. These functions are automatically activated. Terms and conditions apply.


Emergency call ⇒ page 191.

Breakdown call

Pressing the  button in the overhead console for more than two seconds connects to a roadside assistance service provider. For information about coverage and scope of services of the roadside assistance, please refer to the information provided by the Opel Distributor with the order form.

Privacy settings

Privacy settings of Opel Connect can be configured. This will impact the set of data being sent, e.g., in case a breakdown call is triggered. The emergency call function will not be impacted.

Depending on version, the privacy settings can be changed by simultaneously pressing  and **SOS** in the overhead console or via the system settings menu in the Info Display.

Note

Language depends on the geographic coverage of the eCall And Assistance Call systems and the system language of the vehicle.

Warning Triangle

Warning Triangle Kit

This reflective and dismantable device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

Warning

Before getting out of the vehicle

Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

5-door Hatchback storage

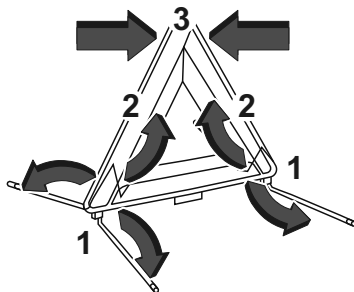
The warning triangle is stored in the space on the right side under the rear floor storage cover.

Sports Tourer storage



The warning triangle is stored in the space at the rear of the load compartment and secured with the Velcro® fastener.

Assembling The Warning Triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.

For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

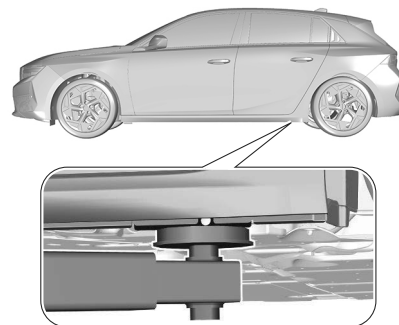
Placing The Triangle

Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing

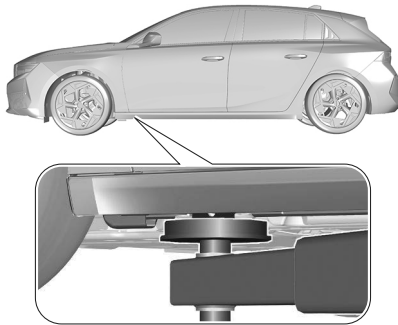
The jacking positions shown refer to the use of lifting arms and accessory jack used for changing winter / summer tires.

Rear jacking position



The rear arm position of the lifting platform is centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point. On BEV vehicles, there is a protective cover that must be removed first.

Front jacking position



The front arm position of the lifting platform is centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

Wheel Changing Toolkit

Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.

Warning

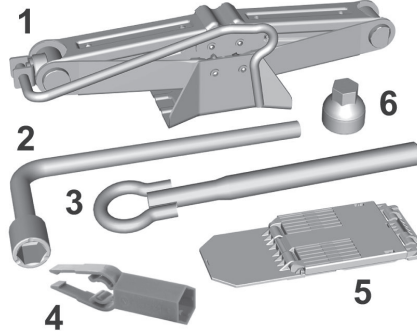
The tool kit is specific to the vehicle and may vary depending on version.
Do not use it for any other purposes.

Depending on version the vehicle tools are located in a toolbag in the load compartment or below the floor cover.

Vehicles with spare wheel

Open the floor cover of the load compartment.

The tools are located in the tool bag.

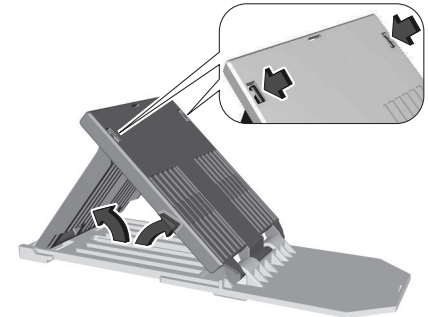


- (1) Jack with integrated handle; to raise the vehicle
- (2) Wheel brace; to remove the wheel bolts
- (3) Removable towing eye
- (4) Bolt cover removal tool (for alloy wheels)
- (5) Chock to immobilize the vehicle (depending on equipment)

- (6) Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment); to adapt the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts

Depending on version, the chock, the towing eye and the adapter for the locking wheel nuts may be located in a bag together with the tire repair kit ⇨ page 197.

For vehicles with spare wheel the jack and wheel wrench is located in a toolbox inside the spare wheel.

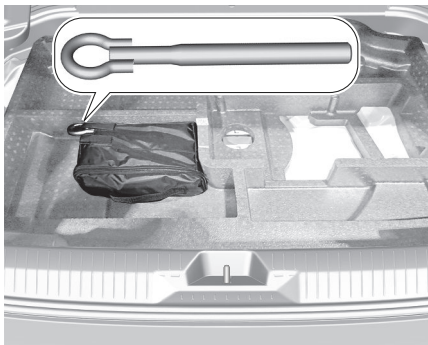


To use the chock, fold apart and stick together.

Vehicles without spare wheel

Open the floor cover of the load compartment.

The towing eye is stored separately in a bag ⇒ page 197.



Spare Wheel

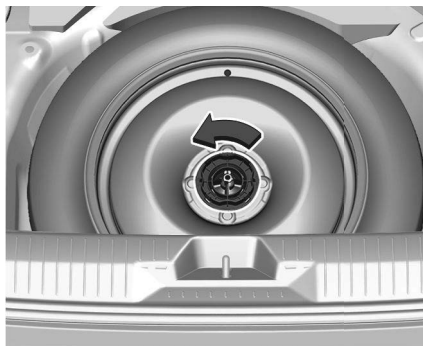
The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations. In this case a permissible maximum speed applies, even though no label at the spare wheel indicates this.

If there is a label on the spare wheel, the permissible speed still depends on the country regulations.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

Caution

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tires could affect driveability. Have the defective tire replaced as soon as possible.



The spare wheel is located in the load compartment beneath the floor covering. To remove:

1. Open the floor cover ⇒ page 60.
2. The temporary spare wheel is secured with a wing nut. Unscrew nut and take out the spare wheel.
3. When, after a wheel change, no wheel is placed in the spare wheel

well, tighten the wing nut and close floor cover.

4. After wheel change back to full size wheel, place the temporary spare wheel in the well and secure with the wing nut.

The permissible maximum speed on the label on the temporary spare wheel is only valid for the factory fitted tire size.

Wheel Removal

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straightahead position.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
- Place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
- Remove the spare wheel.
- Never change more than one wheel at once.
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tire change.
- The jack is maintenance-free.

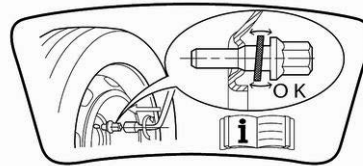
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Before screwing in the wheel bolts, clean them.

⚠ Warning

Do not grease wheel bolts.

⚠ Warning

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.



- Note that the spare wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt if the wheel bolts for the alloy wheel rims are used. In this case, the washers do not come into contact with the spare wheel.

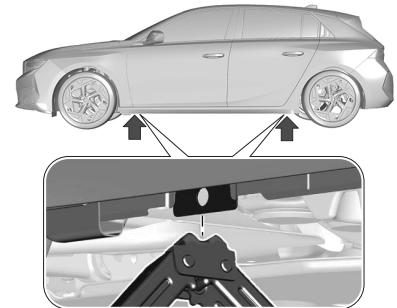
To remove a wheel:

1. Disengage wheel bolt caps with the wheel bolt cover remover. Vehicle tools ⇨ page 193.
Steel wheels rims with cover: pull off the wheel cover.
2. Attach the wheel wrench and loosen each wheel bolt by half a turn.
The wheels might be protected by locking wheel nuts. To loosen these specific nuts first attach the adapter onto the head of the nut before

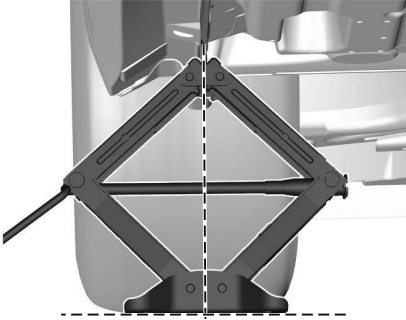
installing the wheel wrench. The adapter is located in the tool bag.



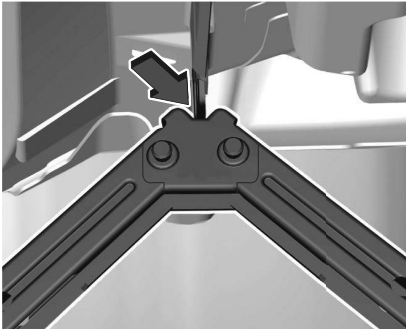
3. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



- Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.



- Ensure that the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.



- With the jack correctly aligned, jack up until wheel is clear of the ground.



- Unscrew the wheel nuts.
- Change the wheel.

Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment

The spare wheel well is not designed for other tire sizes than the spare wheel. A damaged full size wheel must be stowed in the load compartment and secured properly.

Loading information ⇒ page 62.

Wheel Installation

- Screw on the wheel nuts.
- Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
- Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it is located securely and tighten each bolt in a crosswise sequence.

Tightening torque for 15" is 100 Nm and for 16" is 115 Nm.

If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheel rims, note that the wheel bolts can also be used for the spare wheel with steel rims. In this case, the spare wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

- Vehicles with wheel cover: align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tire valve before installing.
- Install wheel nut caps.
- Stow the replaced wheel, the vehicle tools and the adapter for the locking wheel nuts ⇒ page 193.
- Check the tire pressure of the installed tire and the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.

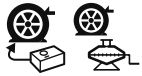
Warning

Do not exceed 80 km/h.

Use only for a short distance, replace with a standard wheel as soon as possible. Expect altered handling: steering response, braking, and stability may be affected.

Tire Repair Kit

Tire Repair Toolkit



<https://shorturl.at/EVO-Si>

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tire so that you can drive to the nearest garage. Minor damage to the tire tread can be repaired with the tire repair kit.

Note

Damage which is either located on the tire wall or larger than 4 mm cannot be repaired using this type of kit.

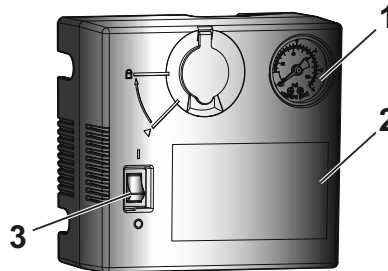
Warning

Do not remove any foreign body (e.g. nail, screw) which has penetrated the tire.

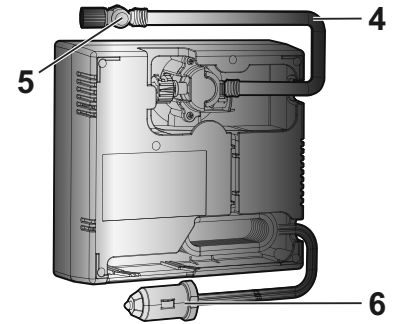
Warning

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
Do not use for a lengthy period.
Steering and handling may be affected.

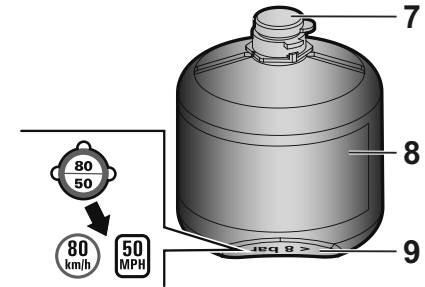
The Tire Repair Kit consists of:



- (1) Pressure gauge
- (2) Instruction label
- (3) ON-OFF switch



- (4) Air tube
- (5) Deflation button
- (6) 12 V power supply cable/plug

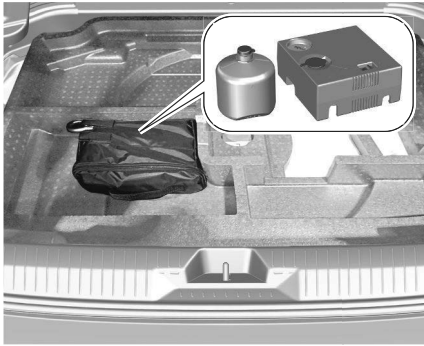


- (7) Cap for the sealant bottle
- (8) Sealant bottle and expiry date
- (9) Speed label

Tire Repair Procedure

In the case of a flat tire:

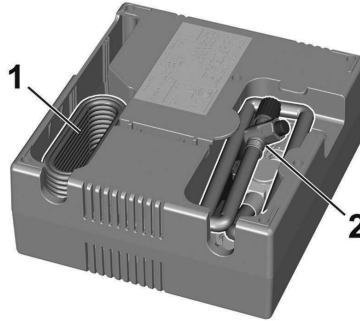
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.



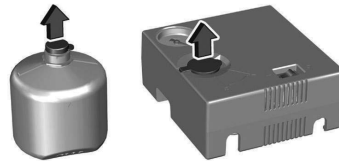
The tire repair kit is in the load compartment below the floor cover. Depending on version, the location of the tire repair kit below the floor cover is different.

1. Pick up the tire repair kit, located in the load compartment below the trunk floor.
2. Pull out the electrical connection cable (1) and the air hose (2) from

the storage compartments on the underside of the compressor.

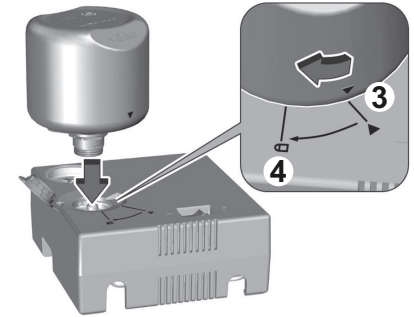


3. Remove the cap from the bottle of sealant.



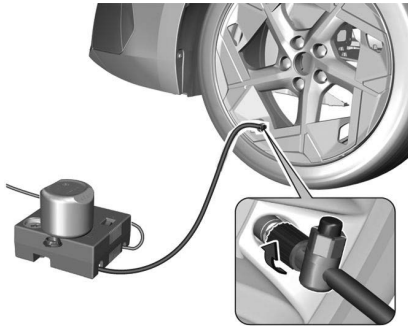
4. Lift the protective cover on the compressor before installing the bottle of sealant.

5. Insert the sealant bottle in the compressor by aligning the triangle symbols (3) on the bottle to the one on the compressor.



6. Push down the sealant bottle and turn it until reached the lock position (4).
7. Set the compressor near the tire in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.
8. Unscrew the valve cap from the tire to be repaired.

9. Connect the pipe from the compressor to the valve of the tire and tighten it firmly.



10. Check that the compressor switch is in position "0".
11. Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12V socket.
- 12.

⚠ Warning

The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

Remove the speed limit label from the sealant bottle and place it in driver's visible area.



13. Switch the ignition on.

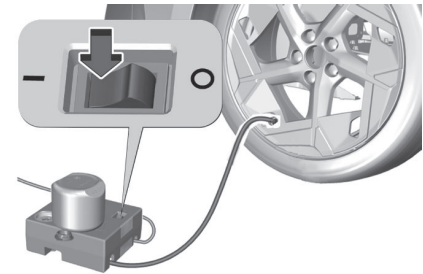
Note

To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend to use the tire repair kit only when the combustion engine is running or when the electric motor is in "READY" mode.

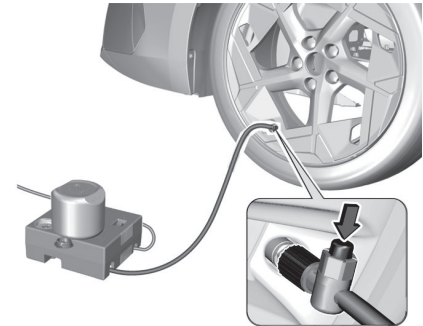
14. Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "I" and start to inflate the tire until the pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tire; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

⚠ Warning

If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tire is not repairable; contact a STELLANTIS dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.



15. If needed, drain excess tire pressure with the deflation button on the air hose.
Do not run the compressor longer than ten minutes.



16. Set the switch to position "O".

17. Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
18. Detach the tire repair kit.
19. Refit the cap on the valve of the tire.
20. Remove the sealant bottle from the compressor and screw the filler hose to the free connection of the bottle to prevent sealant from escaping.
21. Remove any excess of sealant using a cloth.
22. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tire. After driving approx. 5 km, but no more than ten minutes, stop and check tire pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tire valve when doing this. Fill tire as described before. Drain excess tire pressure with the deflation button on the air hose.
If tire pressure hasn't decreased under 200 kPa (2.0 bar), set it to the correct value, otherwise the vehicle must not be used; in this case seek assistance of a STELLANTIS dealer or a qualified workshop.
23. Repeat the checking procedure once more after driving further 10 km, but no more than ten minutes to check that there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tire pressure has fallen below 200 kPa (2.0 bar), the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a STELLANTIS dealer or a qualified workshop.

24. Stow away tire repair kit in load compartment.

Note

The driving characteristics of the repaired tire are severely affected, therefore have this tire replaced as soon as possible.

If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 min.

The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of 700 kPa (7 bar).

Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.

Replace the used sealant bottle.

Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

Checking-Adjusting Tire Pressure

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tire pressures.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire and keep it in a clean place.
2. Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
3. Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
4. Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".

5. Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

6. Switch the ignition on.

Note

To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend to use the tire repair kit only when the combustion engine is running or when the electric motor is in "READY" mode.

7. Start the compressor by setting the switch to "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tire pressure label.

To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

Warning

If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tire is not repairable; contact a STELLANTIS

dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

8. Once the correct pressure is reached, set the switch to "O".
9. Remove the kit and stow it.
10. Refit the cap on the valve.

Jump Starting

Do not start with quick charger. A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Caution

Only jump start another vehicle with an ICE vehicle.

Warning

Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

Warning

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

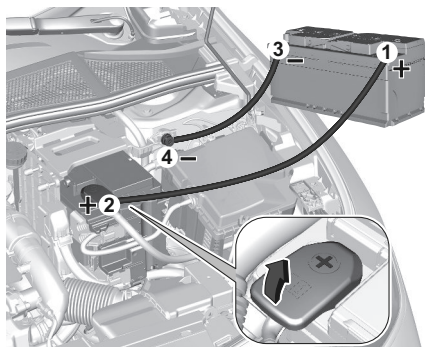
Caution

Connect the jump lead terminals in a way that they do not come in contact with control units. Select a suitable terminal position.

Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery

- Never expose the 12V battery to naked flames or sparks.
- A discharged 12V battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jump leads.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a battery.
- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 V). Its capacity (Ah) should not be significantly lower than the discharged battery.

- Use jump leads with insulated clamps and a cross-section of at least 16 mm² (or 25 mm² for diesel engines).
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment in both vehicles.
- Never lean over the vehicle battery during the jump starting procedure.
- Avoid contact between the two terminals of a single cable, and never let the clamps of one cable touch each other.
- The vehicles must not be in physical contact with each other during the process.
- Engage the parking brake and:
 - for manual transmission vehicles set the gear to neutral;
 - for automatic transmission vehicle set the selector to P mode.



1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster battery (1).
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (2).
3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3).
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point (4) or to a solid metal point (not the battery) on the engine block or chassis of the vehicle with the flat battery.

⚠ Warning

Make sure the jump leads are routed in a way that prevents them from coming into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment, such as belts, fans or pulleys.

5. Start the engine of the booster vehicle.
6. Wait for about 5 minutes, then attempt to start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery. Try for no longer than 15 seconds at a time. Wait one minute between attempts.
7. Once the engine starts, allow both engines to idle for about 3 minutes, with the leads connected.
8. Switch on some electrical consumers (e.g. headlights, rear window heater) on the revived vehicle. This helps avoid voltage spikes when disconnecting the leads.
9. Remove the leads in the exact reverse order of installation.

Charging Another Vehicle

Procedure for charging another vehicle is identical to the procedure of "Jump

Starting", under the point of view of the supplying vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Ensure the supplying battery is fully charged and in optimal operating conditions.

⚠ Warning

Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

After Being Recharged - Restarted

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise. If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a qualified workshop. Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:

- Electronic key.
- Sunroof.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.

Note

After reconnecting the battery, the message "**Collision risk detection system fault**" is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This operation is perfectly normal. The message will disappear while driving.

Towing

Towing The Vehicle

Accessing the tools

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ⇒ page 193.

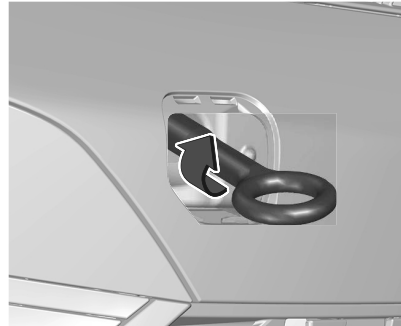
For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing your vehicle



1.

Remove the front towing eye cap.



2.

Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

3. Attach the tow rod to the towing eye.

Note

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

- Switch on ignition to permit operation of brake lights, horn, windshield wiper and, depending on version, to release the steering wheel lock.

Caution

Deactivate the driver assistance systems like active emergency braking, otherwise the vehicle may automatically brake during towing.

- Switch the selector lever to neutral.
- Release the parking brake.

Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

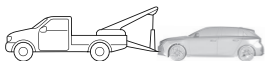
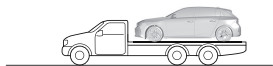
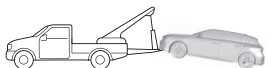
To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

After towing:

- Unscrew the towing eye.

2. Insert cap with the flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

Towing a vehicle with automatic transmission



When towing a **BEV, Hybrid 48 V** or a vehicle equipped with an automatic transmission, transport the vehicle on a platform or tow it with the front wheels lifted.

For more information on **Propulsion types**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing Another Vehicle

Accessing the tools

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ⇒ page 193.

For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing another vehicle



1.

Remove the rear towing eye cap.



2.

Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

3. Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

Note

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

After towing:

1. Unscrew the towing eye.
2. Insert cap with the upper flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

Maintenance And Vehicle Care

General Information	206	Engine Washing.....	217	Seat Belts Maintenance.....	225
Confirmations.....	206	Vehicle Maintenance.....	217	Plastic And Coated Parts.....	226
Accessories and vehicle		Wiper Blade Replacement	217	Instrument Cluster And Displays....	226
modifications	206	Refill AdBlue (Exhaust		Interior and Upholstery	226
Mobile Phones and CB Radio		Emission Fluid).....	218	Glass Surfaces.....	226
Equipment.....	206	Cabin Air Filter	218	Fabric parts.....	226
Very Cold Climate Covers	207	Engine Oil Filter	218	Floor Materials.....	227
End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal	208	Engine Air Filter	218		
Scheduled Servicing	209	Air Conditioner Maintenance	218		
Periodic Checks	209	Compartment Filter	218		
Cheking Fluids Level.....	209	Automatic Transmission.....	219		
Recommended Fluids,		Fuses	219		
Lubricants, and Parts	210	Changing a Fuse.....	219		
Engine Oil	210	Bulb Replacement.....	219		
Washer Fluid	210	Tires and Wheels	219		
Brake and Clutch Fluids	210	Tire Safety Information.....	219		
Antifreeze Coolant.....	210	Tire Markings / Designations.....	220		
Engine Compartment	211	Winter tires	220		
Access to engine compartment	211	Tire pressure	220		
Petrol Engine	211	Tire Deflation Detection System ...	221		
Diesel Engine	212	Tread Depth	222		
PHEV Engine	212	Allowed Tire and Rim Sizes.....	222		
BEV Engine	212	Wheel Covers	222		
MHEV Engine	213	Tire Chains	222		
Checking Oil Level	213	Vehicle Storage.....	223		
Adding Washer Fluid	214	Long-time Storage of a Hybrid /			
Adding Coolant Fluid	214	Electric Vehicle	223		
Checking Brake Fluid	215	Bodywork-Exterior Care	224		
12V Battery	215	General Recommendations.....	224		
		High Gloss Paint	225		
		Decals	225		
		Interior Care	225		
		General Recommendations.....	225		

General Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals. The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature.

Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in the service display. Contact a workshop for customised service schedules.

Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet.

The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

Accessories and vehicle modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval. Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Opel. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, may impact fuel consumption, CO₂ emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

Caution

Access to the diagnostic socket associated with the on-board electronics is reserved for qualified technicians and approved tools.

Caution

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

Mobile Phones And CB Radio Equipment

The vehicle specific installation instructions and the operating guidelines of the mobile phone and hands-free manufacturer must be observed when installing and operating a mobile telephone. Failure to do so could invalidate the vehicle type approval. Recommendations for fault-free operation:

- Professionally installed exterior antenna to obtain the maximum range possible.
- Maximum transmission power 10 W.

- Installation of the phone in a suitable spot, consider the area in which the airbag inflates ⇒ page 28.

Seek advice on predetermined installation points for the external antenna or equipment holder and ways of using devices with a transmission power exceeding 10 W.

Use of a hands-free attachment without external antenna with mobile telephone standards GSM 900/1800/1900 and UMTS is only permitted if the maximum transmission power of the mobile telephone is 2 W for GSM 900 or 1 W for the other types.

For reasons of safety, do not use the phone while driving. Even use of a hands-free set can be a distraction while driving.

Warning

Operation of radio equipment and mobile telephones which fail to meet above mentioned mobile telephone standards is only permitted using an antenna located outside of the vehicle.

Caution

Mobile telephones and radio equipment may lead to malfunctions in the vehicle electronics when operated inside the

vehicle with no exterior antenna, unless the above mentioned regulations are observed.

Very Cold Climate Covers

(Depending on country)

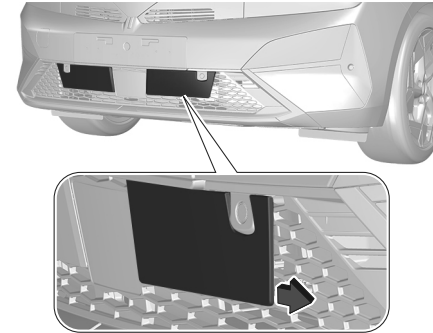
It is recommended to have the cold protection covers installed by a workshop.

Danger

The cold protection covers must be removed when one of the following conditions occurs:

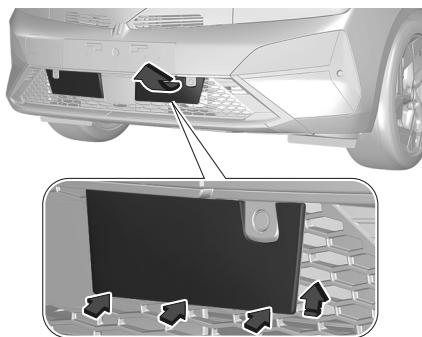
- The ambient temperature is above 10 °C.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle is driven at speeds above 120 km/h.

Installation



Press the protection covers against the slat of the grille. Ensure that the protection covers are fixed securely.

Deinstallation



1. Move all lower flaps upwards to unclip the protection covers.
2. Pull the protection covers forwards and remove it.

End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.



High voltage battery

The high voltage battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations are followed. If it becomes necessary to replace the high voltage battery, contact a workshop for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.

Service information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals.

The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature.

Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in the service display. Contact a workshop for customised service schedules.

Service display ⇨ page 94.

Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet.

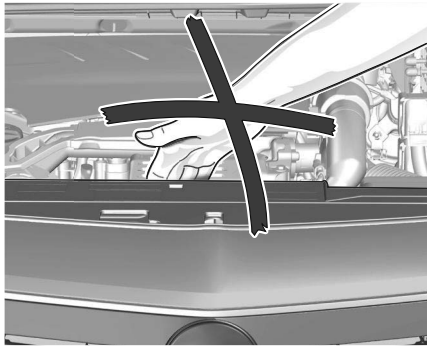
The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

Service display → page 94.

Scheduled Servicing

Periodic Checks



Warning

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off. The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

Danger

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.



Danger

Electric or Hybrid versions:
Never try to perform maintenance work on high voltage components yourself. You may be injured and the vehicle may be damaged.
Service and repair of these high voltage components should only be performed by a trained service technician with proper knowledge and tools. Exposure to high voltage may cause shock, burns, and even death. The high voltage components in the vehicle can only be serviced by technicians with special training.
High voltage components are identified by labels. Do not remove, open, take apart, or modify these components. High voltage cable or wiring has orange covering. Do not probe, tamper with, cut, or modify high voltage cable or wiring.

Warning

Electric or Hybrid versions:
Only perform engine compartment checks when the vehicle is off. The cooling fan may start operating even if the vehicle is off.

Caution

Electric or Hybrid versions:
Even small amounts of contamination to the liquids can cause damage to vehicle systems.
Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

Checking Fluids Level

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning

The fluids must comply with the Manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

⚠ Warning

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Diesel Fuel System Bleeding

If the tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled. Refuel at least five litres diesel. Switch on the ignition for about 60 seconds and switch off again. Then crank the engine. If the engine does not start directly, repeat this process a few times. If the engine then fails to start, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

⚠ Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine Oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Use the appropriate engine oil given on the service schedule sheet handed over by the selling dealer.

Topping up engine oil**Caution**

In case of any spilled oil, wipe it up and dispose it properly.

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Use of engine oils for all petrol engines with only ACEA quality is prohibited, since it can cause engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine oil viscosity grades

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil. Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Washer Fluid

Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

Brake And Clutch Fluids

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval. Use only brake fluid approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

Antifreeze Coolant

Use only antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop. The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -28 °C. In cold regions with very low temperatures the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to

approx. -37°C . This concentration should be maintained all year round.

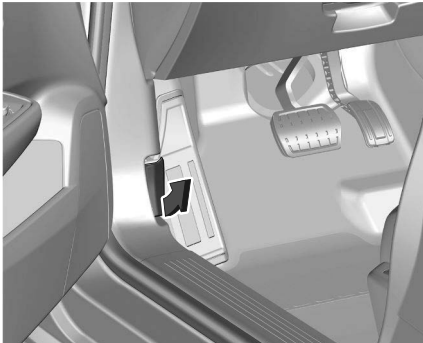
The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

Engine Compartment

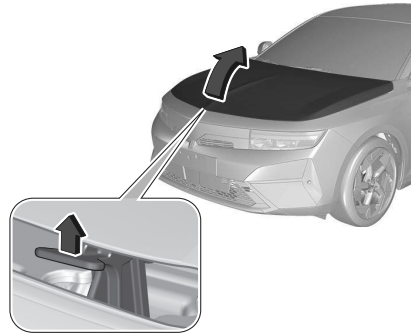
Access To Engine Compartment

Opening

Open the left front door.



Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.



Push the safety catch upwards and open the bonnet.



Secure the bonnet support.

Closing

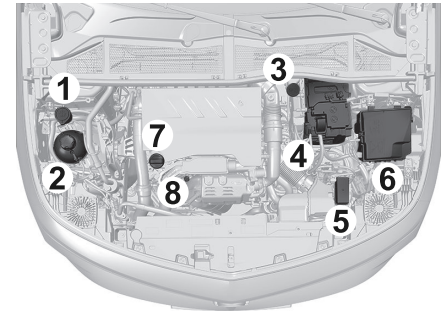
Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder.

Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm). Check that the bonnet is engaged.

Caution

Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents

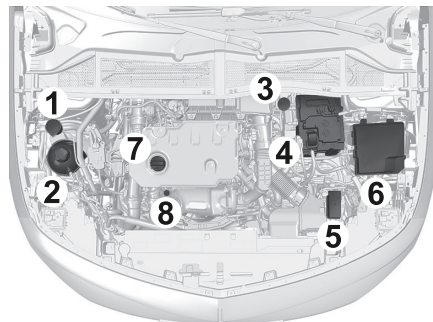
Petrol Engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. 12 V battery
5. Fuse Box
6. Air filter

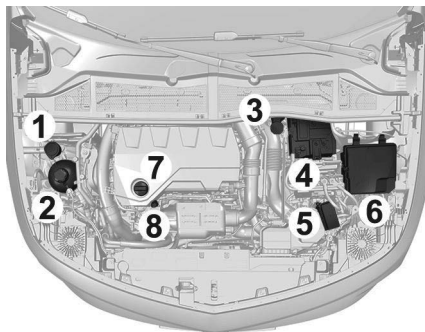
7. Engine oil filler cap
8. Engine oil dipstick

Diesel Engine



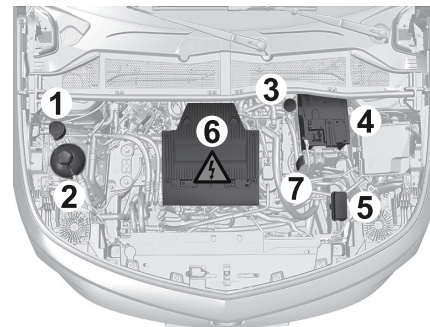
1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. 12 V battery
5. Fuse Box
6. Air filter
7. Engine oil filler cap
8. Engine oil dipstick

PHEV Engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. 12 V battery
5. Fuse Box
6. Air filter
7. Engine oil filler cap
8. Engine oil dipstick

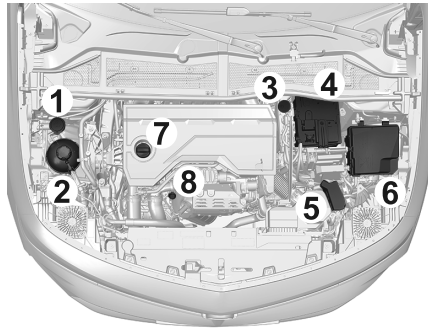
BEV Engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. 12 V battery
5. Fuse Box
6. 400 V electrical circuit
7. Emergency circuit-breaker for emergency services and maintenance technicians

For more information on the **Charging system (BEV)**, refer to the corresponding section.

MHEV Engine



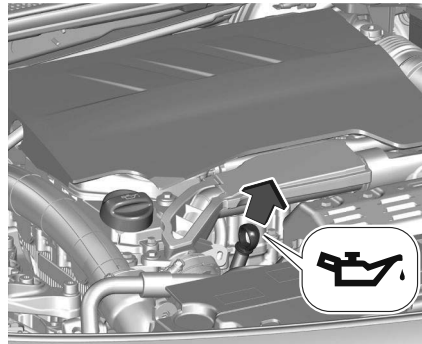
1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. 12 V battery
5. Fuse Box
6. Air filter
7. Engine oil filler cap
8. Engine oil dipstick

Checking Oil Level

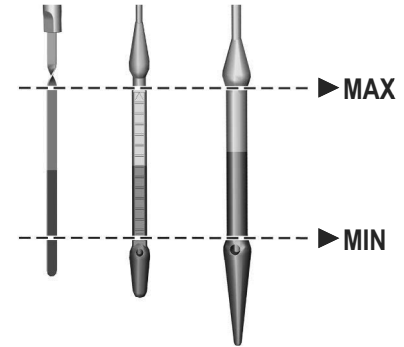
Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of engine oil is used. Recommended fluids and lubricants → page 210.

The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 1000 km.

Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least five minutes.



Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.



Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, reinsert it fully, pull out and read the engine oil level.

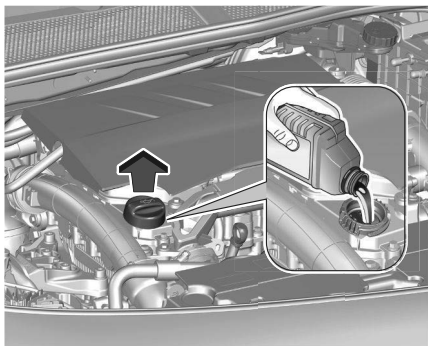
⚠ Warning

Insert dipstick fully up to the stop on the handle.

Ensure that no engine oil gets into the engine compartment, as this increases risk of fire.

When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up the engine oil.

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.

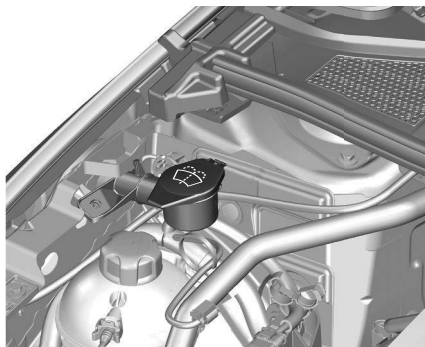


The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

Caution

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out. If the oil exceeds the maximum level, do not start the vehicle and contact a workshop.

Adding Washer Fluid



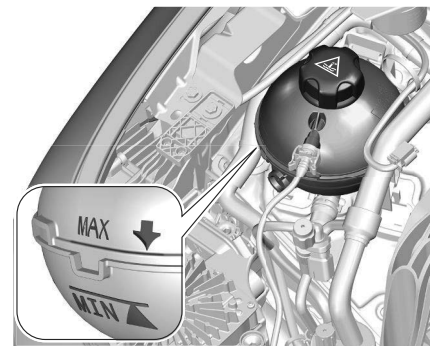
Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windshield washer fluid which contains antifreeze.

Caution

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Adding Coolant Fluid

Coolant level PHEV / BEV



If the coolant level is at the **MIN** mark or below, seek the assistance of a workshop to have the engine coolant topped up.

Caution

Using the wrong engine coolant can cause severe damages to the high voltage battery. Only experienced mechanics are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and to top up coolant.

Coolant level ICE and Hybrid 48 V

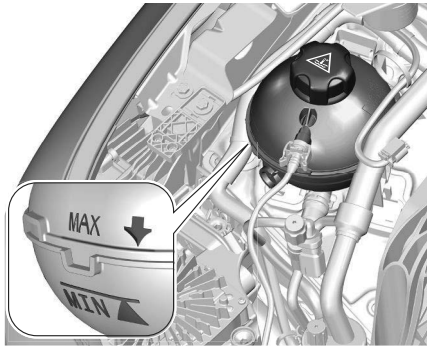
The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -37°C .

Caution

Only use approved antifreeze.

Caution

A too low coolant level can cause engine damage.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the MIN mark. Top up if the level is low.

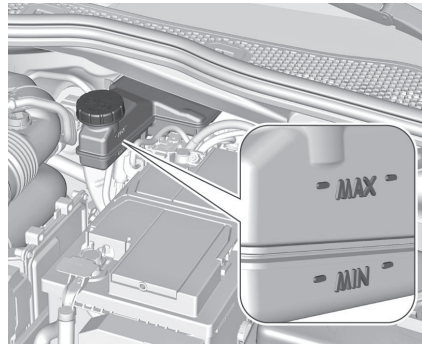
Warning

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Checking Brake Fluid**Warning**

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.



The brake fluid level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If fluid level is below **MIN** seek the assistance of a workshop.
Brake and clutch fluid ⇒ page 210.

12V Battery

Meaning of symbols:



No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.



Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.



Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.



The vehicle's battery contains sulphuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.



For more information, refer to the handbook.



Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

The vehicle battery is maintenancefree provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point. Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery. Battery discharge protection ⇒ page 52. Anti-theft alarm system ⇒ page 12. Vehicle storage ⇒ page 223.

Replacing the vehicle battery

Note

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system. When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no

open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the vehicle battery is always replaced by the same type of battery. All battery information can be found online at <https://public-servicebox.opel.com/OVddb/OV/index.html>.

The vehicle battery has to be replaced by a workshop.

Stop-start system ⇒ page 111.

Charging the vehicle battery

Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 V when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery may be damaged.

Jump starting ⇒ page 201.

Battery voltage

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the

air conditioning, the heated rear window, heated seats, heated steering wheel, etc. The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Idle boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

Power outlet

The power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Power Saving Mode

This mode deactivates electrical consumers to avoid excessive discharging of the vehicle battery. These consumers, such as the Infotainment system, windshield wipers, low beam headlights, courtesy light, etc. can be used for a total maximum time of about 40 minutes after ignition is switched off.

Changing into power saving mode

When power saving mode is activated, a message appears on the cluster.

An active telephone call using the hands-free option will be maintained for around ten minutes longer.

Deactivating power saving mode

Power saving mode is deactivated automatically when the engine is restarted. Run the engine for a sufficient charge:

- for less than ten minutes to use the consumers for approx. five minutes
- for more than ten minutes to use the consumers for up to approx. 30 minutes

Heating functionalities

Note

Individual heating functionalities, such as heated seats or heated steering wheel, may be temporarily unavailable in the event of electric loading constraints. Functions will be resumed after some minutes.

Engine Washing

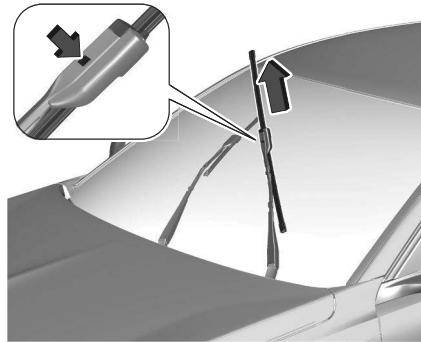
Warning

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Vehicle Maintenance

Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield



Caution

Never attempt to move the wipers manually. This can cause permanent damage to the mechanism.

To replace the wiper blades, place the wipers in the maintenance position:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Within 60 seconds, pull the wiper lever towards you.

The wipers will move to a vertical position for easy access.

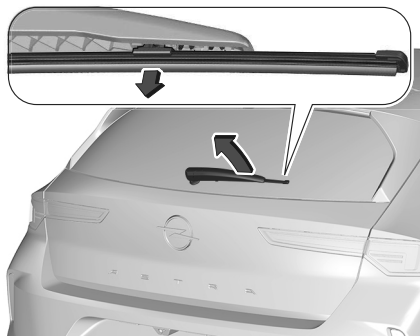
Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove. Attach the new wiper blade to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

To return the wipers to the normal position:

1. Gently place the wiper arms on the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Operate the wiper lever.

Caution

Do not allow the wiper arms to slam on the windshield. This can damage the blades and the windscreen.

Rear window

Lift the wiper arm only slightly until it engages. Disengage wiper blade and remove.

Caution

Attach the wiper blade to the inner position of the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower wiper arm carefully. Check that the wiper arm is not blocked while operating.

Refill AdBlue (Exhaust Emission Fluid)

An alert is triggered when the reserve level is reached.

For more information on the Indicators and in particular the **AdBlue®** range indicators, refer to the corresponding section.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised in accordance with regulations, you must top up the **AdBlue®** tank.

Cabin Air Filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

Note

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Note

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Engine Oil Filter

Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Engine Air Filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

Air Conditioner Maintenance

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year.

Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low. Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), change it twice as often, if necessary.

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Compartment Filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

Note

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Automatic Transmission

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Fuses**Changing A Fuse**

A defective fuse must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Bulb Replacement

The exterior lights are equipped with LED technology and cannot be changed. In the event of a malfunction of any exterior or interior light, contact a workshop.

Warning

Do not touch the LED or Full LED technology headlamps - risk of electrocution!

Warning
Light-emitting diode (LED) headlights

In case of replacement of this type of light, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tires and Wheels

The inflation pressure of all tires, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tires. The pressures indicated on the tire pressure label are valid for "cold" tires. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 10 kilometres at over 50 km/h, add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

Warning

Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tire pressures cause tires to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tires reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tires (tread

and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.

When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tires as soon as possible. Using different size wheels and tires from those specified can affect the lifetime of tires, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tires on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime. Always mark the direction of rotation on the tires that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tires. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.



Winter or 4-seasons tires can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

Tire Safety Information

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tire and wheel damage. Do not trap tires on the kerb when parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

Tire Markings / Designations

E.g. 225/55 R 18 98 V

225 tire width, mm

55 cross-section ratio (tire height to tire width), %

R belt type: Radial

RF type: RunFlat

18 wheel diameter, inches

98 load index e.g. 98 is equivalent to 750 kg

V speed code letter

Speed code letter:

Q up to 160 km/h

S up to 180 km/h

T up to 190 km/h

H up to 210 km/h

V up to 240 km/h

W up to 270 km/h

Choose a tire appropriate for the maximum speed of the vehicle. The maximum speed is achievable at kerb weight with driver (75 kg) plus 125 kg payload. Optional equipment

could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Directional tires

Directional tires should be mounted so that they rotate in the correct direction. The proper rotation direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

Winter Tires

Winter tires improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels. In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view, if the tire speed code is below the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Tire Pressure

Check the pressure of cold tires at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel. This also applies to vehicles with tire deflation detection system.



The tire pressure information label indicates the original equipment tires and the correspondent tire pressures. The tire pressure data refers to cold tires. It applies to summer and winter tires. Always inflate the spare tire to the pressure specified for full load. Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tire wear. Tire pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tire pressure value, follow the procedure below:

1. Identify the respective tire.
2. Identify the engine identifier code.
Engine data ⇒ page 232.

For the tires approved for your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity

provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents. The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tire pressure.

Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tire wear and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tire blow-out at high speeds.

Warning

For specific tires the recommended tire pressure as shown in the tire pressure table may exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tire. Never exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tire.

Temperature dependency

The tire pressure depends on the temperature of the tire. During driving, tire temperature and pressure increase. Tire pressure values provided on the tire information label and tire pressure chart are valid for cold tires, which means at 20 °C.


The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This

must be considered when warm tires are checked.

Tire Deflation Detection System

The tire deflation detection system continually checks the rotation speed of all four wheels and warns on low tire pressure condition once vehicle is driving. This is achieved by comparing tire rolling circumference with reference values and further signals.

If a tire loses pressure the control

indicator  illuminates and a warning message is displayed on the cluster.

Control indicator  ⇒ page 83.

In this case reduce speed, avoid sharp cornering and strong braking.

Stop at next safe opportunity and check tire pressure.

After adjusting tire pressure initialise system to extinguish the control indicator and restart system.

If the failure continues to be displayed, contact a workshop. The system is inoperable when the ABS or Electronic Stability Control has a malfunction or a temporary spare wheel is used. Once the tire has been refitted, check the tire pressure with cold tires and initialise the system.

Caution

Deflation detection system warns just about low tire pressure condition and does not replace regular tire maintenance by the driver.

System initialisation

After tire pressure correction or wheel change, the system must be initialised to learn new circumference reference values:

1. Always ensure that all four tires have correct tire pressure
2. Apply parking brake.
3. Initialise the system via the Info Display ⇒ page 94.
4. Reset is confirmed by pop-up indication.

After initialisation system automatically calibrates to new tire pressures during driving. After longer drive the system will adopt and monitor new pressures. Always check tire pressure with cold tires.

System has to be reinitialised when:

- Tire pressure has been changed
- Load condition has been changed

- Wheels have been swapped or exchanged

The system will not warn instantaneously on a tire blow out or a rapid deflation. This is due to required calculation time.

Tread Depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals. Tires should be replaced for safety reasons at a tread depth of 2-3 mm (4 mm for winter tires).

For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tires on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.

Tires age, even if they are not used. We recommend tire replacement every six years.

Allowed Tire And Rim Sizes

If tires of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme the system and make other vehicle modifications. Have the label with tire pressures replaced.

⚠ Warning

The use of unsuitable tires or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Wheel Covers

Wheel covers and tires that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tire combination requirements must be used.

If the wheel covers and tires used are not factory approved, the tires must not have a rim protection ridge.

Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

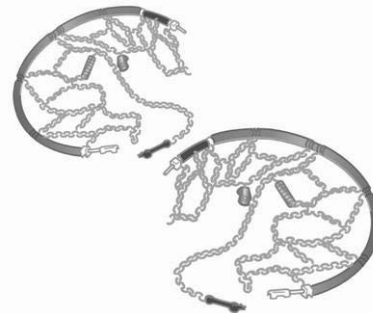
⚠ Warning

Use of unsuitable tires or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Vehicles with steel wheel rims: When using locking wheel nuts, do not attach wheel covers.

Temporary spare wheel: Do not use wheel covers.

Tire Chains



Tire chains are only permitted on the front wheels.

Only use tyre chains designed to be used with tyre type of the vehicle:

- For 16 inch and 17 inch tyres, only use fine mesh tyre chains that add no more than 9 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).
- For 18 inch tyres, only use **Polaire PSGB 60** tyre chains.

Note

The use of tyre chains and the maximum allowed speed is regulated by country-specific legislation.

Warning

Damage may lead to tyre blowout.

When fitting the tyre chains follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the tyre chains.

After having fitted the tyre chains, stop the vehicle after having driven a short distance and make sure that the tyre chains are correctly tightened.

Temporary spare wheel

The use of tyre chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

Vehicle Storage

Long-Time Storage Of A Hybrid / Electric Vehicle

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**.
- Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the hood, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

Up to four weeks

Plug in the charging cable.

Four weeks to twelve months

- Discharge the high voltage battery until 30 percent remain on the battery range indicator (battery symbol) on the cluster.
- Do not plug in the charging cable.
- Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and 30°C .
- Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high voltage battery.
- Remove the black negative (-) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals in the engine compartment.
- Every three months, check the battery's state of charge. If the state of charge is below 30 percent, recharge the battery to 30 percent.

Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Initialise the power windows
- Check tire pressure
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

Bodywork-Exterior Care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Locks

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using a de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

Washing

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions.

The windshield wiper and rear window wiper must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out. Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Clean bright metal mouldings with a cleaning solution approved for aluminium to avoid damages.

Caution

Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of 4 to 9.
Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

Exterior lights

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

Polishing and Waxing

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Switch off wipers before handling in their areas.

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner. Also make sure to remove any residues such as wax, insect residues and similar from the window.

Ice residues, pollution and continuous wiping on dry windows will damage or even destroy the wiper blades.

Wheels and Tires

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners. Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

Underbody

Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.

After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.

Bitumen / rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.

Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

Towing Equipment

Do not clean the coupling ball bar with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

High Gloss Paint

Warning

Do not use abrasive products or solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.

Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains. Risk of scratching the paintwork!

Do not apply polish.

Note

Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.

Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.

Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.

Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending on version)

Warning

Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

Note

Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C).

Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.

Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Interior Care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Seat Belts Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the vehicle to wash them. Dry with a soft cloth.

Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

Plastic And Coated Parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use highpressure jet cleaners.

Instrument Cluster And Displays

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

Clean with a wet soft cloth. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp cloth. Dry with a soft cloth.

Note

Never use alcohol, petrols and derivatives to clean the dashboard and instrument panel lens.

Interior And Upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clothing fabrics may not be colourfast. This could cause visible discolourations, especially on lightcoloured upholstery.

Removable stains and discolourations should be cleaned as soon as possible.

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.

Glass Surfaces

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with any commercial household-type glass cleaner.

Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments that may scratch the elements.

When cleaning the rear-view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or cloth that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

Note

Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or windows equipped with radio antennas.

Fabric Parts

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and paneling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

Use a specific product to clean carpets and fabric upholstery.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush.

Clothing fabrics may not be colorfast. This could cause visible discolorations, especially on light colored upholstery.

Removable stains and discolorations should be cleaned as soon as possible. It is advisable to use a moist brush on velvet upholstery. Rub the seats using a soft microfiber cloth moistened with a solution of water and neutral detergent. Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

Warning

Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.

Floor Materials

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that certified floor mats be purchased. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.

Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.

Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.

Warning

If a floor mat has the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with pedals, what can cause unintended acceleration or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

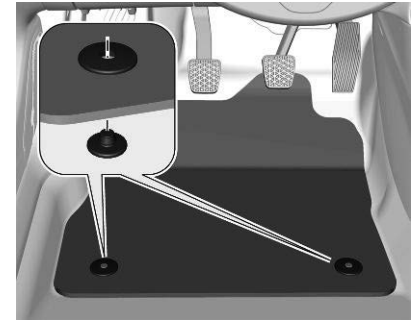
- The original equipment floor mats were designed for this vehicle. If the floor mats need to be replaced, it is recommended to buy certified floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.

Installing and removing the floor mats

The driver's side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.

To install the floor mat:

- Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
- Align slots in the mat with the retainers, as shown.
- Push the mat to the floor.



Removing floor mats

To remove the floor mat:

- Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
- Pull the floor mat upwards to remove.

 **Warning**

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.

- Never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

Technical Specifications

- Vehicle Identification.....229
 - Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 229
 - Identification plate 229
 - Engine Identification 230
- Vehicle data 231
 - Dimensions231
 - Engine data 232
 - High Voltage Battery..... 235
- Engine Fluids and Lubricants..... 236
- Fluid capacities 237
- Wheels and Tires 238
 - Tightening Torques..... 238

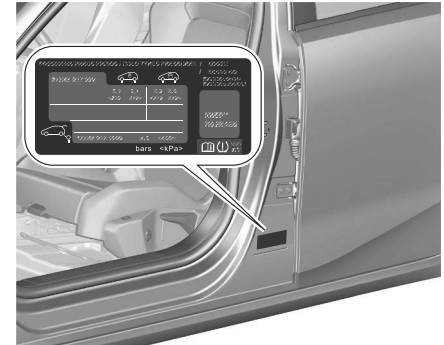
Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

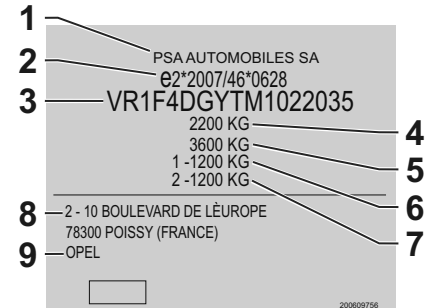


The Vehicle Identification Number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windshield, or in the engine compartment on the right body panel.

Identification Plate



The identification plate is located on the front right door frame. The layout and position differ for some export countries.



Information on identification label:

- 1 manufacturer

- 2 type approval number
- 3 vehicle identification number
- 4 permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg
- 5 permissible gross train weight in kg
- 6 maximum permissible front axle load in kg
- 7 maximum permissible rear axle load in kg
- 8 manufacturer address, vehiclespecific or country-specific data
- 9 vehicle brand

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight.

Vehicle's kerb weight depends on the specification of the vehicle, e.g. optional equipment and accessories.

Refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications.

Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

Engine Identification

The technical data tables show the engine identifier code.

The engine data table additionally shows the engineering code.

Engine data ⇒ page 232.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the engine power in the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	5-door Hatchback	Sports Tourer
Length [mm]	4374	4642
Width with two exterior mirrors folded [mm]	1860	1860
Width with two exterior mirrors [mm]	2062	2062
Height (without antenna) [mm]	1441-1488	1443-1499
Length of load compartment floor [mm]	795 770 ¹	1026
Length of load compartment with folded second row [mm] ²	1589	1850
Load compartment width between wheel arches [mm]	1020	1032
Wheelbase [mm]	2675	2732
Turning circle diameter [m]	10.51	10.68

¹ PHEV

² With front seat in middle longitudinal position

Engine Data

Engine identifier code	EB2ADT	EB2ADTS	EB2ADTSM	DV5RC
Sales designation	1.2 T	1.2 T	1.2 T	1.5 D
Piston displacement [cm ³]	1199	1199	1199	1498
Engine power [kW] / rpm	81 / 5500	96 / 5500	96 / 5500	96 / 3750
Torque [Nm] / rpm	205 / 1750	230 / 1750	230 750	300 / 1750
Fuel type	Petrol	Petrol	Petrol	Diesel
Octane rating RON ³⁴				
recommended	95	95	95	-
possible	98	98	98	-
possible	91	91	-	-

³ A country specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the engine specific requirement.

⁴ In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel, e.g. a specific octane rating, may be required to ensure proper engine operation.

Engine identifier code	EP6LTCHPE	EP6FADTXHPD	EP6LTCHP	EP6FADTXHPE
Sales designation	PHEV	PHEV	PHEV	PHEV
Piston displacement [cm ³]	1598	1598	1598	1598
Max. Combustion engine power in [kW]/rpm	110 / 5500	132 / 6000	132 / 5500	110 / 4250
Max. Electric motor power in [kW]	92	81.2	92	81.2
Max. Combined system power in [kW]	144	165	165	133
Max. Torque [Nm]/rpm Combustion engine	250 / 1750	250 / 1750	250 / 1750	250 / 1750
Max. Torque [Nm] Electric motor	118	320	118	320
Max. Torque [Nm] Combined system	360	360	360	360
Fuel type	Petrol	Petrol	Petrol	Petrol
Octane rating RON ⁵⁶				
recommended	95	95	95	95
possible	98	98	98	98
possible	91	91	91	91

⁵ A country specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the engine specific requirement.

⁶ In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel, e.g. a specific octane rating, may be required to ensure proper engine operation.

Engine identifier code	EB2LTDH2	Electric engine
Sales designation	1.2 T Hybrid 48 V	BEV M3
Piston displacement [cm ³]	1199	-
Max. Combustion engine power in [kW]/rpm	100 (136) / 5500	-
Max. Electric motor power in [kW]	15.6 (21) / 4264 rpm	115 (156) / -
Max. Combined system power in [kW]	107 (145)	-
Max. Torque [Nm]/rpm Combustion engine	230 / 1750	-
Max. Torque [Nm] Electric motor	51 / 750 to 2499 rpm	270 / -
Max. Torque [Nm] Combined system	230	-
Fuel type	Petrol	-
Octane rating RON ⁷⁸		
recommended	95	-
possible	98	-
possible	91	-

⁷ A country specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the engine specific requirement.

⁸ In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel, e.g. a specific octane rating, may be required to ensure proper engine operation.

High Voltage Battery

PHEV Powertrain	Lithium-ion Battery
Battery capacity (kWh) usable	14,2
Battery capacity (kWh) total	17,2
Voltage (Ah)	41,5
Voltage range (V)	210 - 352
Number of cells	84

BEV Powertrain	Lithium-ion Battery
Battery capacity (BEV) [kWh]	58,2
DC fast charging (kW)	100
Energy consumption (kWh/100km, WLTP)	15,4
Range (km, WLTP)	454

Engine Fluids and Lubricants

The engine oil used on the vehicle has been carefully developed and

tested to meet the requirements of the planned maintenance drawing. Use only recommended lubricants to prolong engine operation and life.

Warning

The use of products with specifications other than those indicated could cause damage to the engine not covered by the warranty.

Engine type	Viscosity grades	Specification	Recommended product
EB2LTDH2	SAE 0W20	955535/01	QUARTZ FPW01
EP6LTCHP	SAE 0W20	955535/01	QUARTZ FPW01
EB2ADT / EB2ADTS / EB2ADTSM	SAE 5W30	9.55535/03	QUARTZ FPW 03
DV5RC	SAE 5W30	9.55535/03	QUARTZ FPW 03

Fluid capacities

Engine oil

Engine	EB2ADT, EB2ADTS, EB2LTDH2	EB2ADTSM	DV5RC	EP6FADTXHPE, EP6FADTXHPD, EP6LTCHP, EP6LTCHPE
including filter [l]	3.6	3.6	3.8	4.3
between MIN and MAX [l]	1.1	1.1	1.6	1.2

Fuel tank

Petrol / diesel (ICE), refilling quantity [l]	52
Petrol (MHEV), refilling quantity [l]	52
Petrol (PHEV), refilling quantity [l]	42

AdBlue tank

AdBlue, refilling quantity [l]	13
--------------------------------	----

Wheels and Tires

Tightening Torques

 **Warning**

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

Depending on the wheel rim material, two different bolts are available.



Tightening torque for alloy wheel rims is 115 Nm.



Tightening torque for steel wheel rims is 115 Nm.

Use the correct wheel bolts for the respective wheel rims.

Customer Information

Customer Information.....	239
Declaration of Conformity	239
REACH	241
Software update	241
Registered trademarks	242
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy.....	242
Emergency Call Data Recording and Privacy	242
Event data recorders	243
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)	246
Protecting measures against cyber attacks.....	246
Applying legal Obligations and respective requirements.....	247

Customer Information

Declaration Of Conformity

Transmission systems

This vehicle has systems that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 by the United Kingdom. The manufacturers of the systems listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity for each system is available at the following internet address: www.opel.com/conformity.
Importer is Opel Automobile GmbH, Bahnhofspatz, 65423 Ruesselsheim am Main, Germany.

Radars :

Manufacturer :

Robert Bosch GmbH

Robert-Bosch-Platz 1, 70839 Gerlingen-Schillerhöhe, Germany

Operating Frequencies : 76.0 - 77.0 GHz
Max power: 29,25 dBm peak 21,9 dBm nominal | 28,1 dBm Peak 17,8 dBm
RMS

Radio & Infotainment system :

Manufacturer :

MARELLI EUROPE S.p.A, Viale A. Borletti 61/63, Corbetta, Italy

Infotainment System

	Operation frequency (MHz)	Maximum output (dBm)
BT	2402.0 - 2480.0	2.34
Wifi	5725 MHz to 5875 MHz	20 MHz BW : 5745 MHz → 12.86 40 MHz BW : 5755 MHz → 12.48 80 MHz BW : 5775 MHz → 11.84

Immobilizer :

Manufacturer :

Aptiv Services Deutschland GmbH, Am Technologiepark 1 D-42119 Wuppertal, Germany

Operating Frequencies : 125 kHz
Max power : -18.97dBμA/m @10m

Telematic box :

● BSRF:

Manufacturer :

**Continental Automotive GmbH,
Siemensstrasse 12,93055
Regensburg, Germany**

Operating Frequencies :

FM: 87,5 - 108 MHz;

AM : 148,5 - 283,5 kHz, 526,5 - 1606,5 kHz;

DAB : 174 - 240 MHz;

WIFI: 2,4GHz et 5GHz;

LTE (1.4 MHz 3 MHz 5 MHz 10 MHz 15 MHz 20 MHz);

GNSS: 1559-1610 MHz.

Max power : GSM (33 dBm +/- 2 dB),

LTE/WCDMA (23 dBm +/- 2 dB)

● RTBM:

Manufacturer :

**FIH Co., Ltd No.4, Minsheng St.,
Tucheng Dist., 236 New Taipei City,
Taiwan**

Wi-Fi :

802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz)

Frequencies: 2412 – 2472 MHz

Max power: 18.83 dBm

802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz):

Frequencies: 5180 – 5240 MHz

Max power: 15.99 dBm

● SRD :

Frequencies: 5745 – 5825 MHz

Max power: 13.93 dBm

● GSM 900:

Frequencies: 880–915 MHz (émission),

925–960 MHz (réception)

Max power: 33 dBm (valeur nominale)

● GSM 1800:

Frequencies: 1710–1785 MHz

(émission), 1805–1880 MHz

(réception)

Max power: 30 dBm (valeur nominale)

● WCDMA Band I :

Frequencies: 1920–1980 MHz

(émission), 2110–2170 MHz

(réception)

Max power: 24 dBm (valeur nominale)

● WCDMA Band VIII:

Frequencies: 880–915 MHz (émission),

925–960 MHz (réception)

Max power: 24 dBm

● LTE FDD Band 1 :

Frequencies: 1920–1980 MHz

(émission), 2110–2170 MHz

(réception)

Max power : 23 dBm

● LTE FDD Band 3 :

Frequencies: 1710–1785 MHz

(émission), 1805–1880 MHz

(réception)

Max power : 23 dBm

● LTE FDD Band 7 :

Frequencies: 2500–2570 MHz

(émission), 2620–2690 MHz

(réception)

Max power : 23 dBm

● LTE FDD Band 8 :

Frequencies: 880–915 MHz (émission),

925–960 MHz (réception)

Max power : 23 dBm

● LTE FDD Band 20 :

Frequencies: 832–862 MHz (émission),

791–821 MHz (réception)

Max power : 23 dBm

● LTE FDD Band 28 :

Frequencies: 703–748 MHz (émission),

758–803 MHz (réception)

Max power: 23 dBm

Telecomand & telemetry:

● ADML :

Manufacturer :

**Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance,
76, rue Auguste Perret 94046 Créteil -
CEDEX, France**

Operating Frequencies :

433,05...434,79MHz / 125kHz 2402...

2480MHz

Max power : 10 dBm /-6,85 dBm /

125kHz: -7,3 dBm

● PLIP :

Manufacturer :

**Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co.
KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert,
Germany**

Operating Frequencies : 433,92 MHz
Max power : 11.3 dBm

Top Column Module :

Manufacturer :

**Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance
Systems, 76 rue Auguste Perret Zone,
Europarc Cedex 94046 Créteil, France**

Operating Frequencies : 119 to 134kHz
Max power : 72dBµA/m@10m

Radio Antenna :

Manufacturer :

**ASK Industrie SpA, C.P. 110 c/o U.P.
RE2, 42121 Reggio Emilia, Italy**

Operating Frequencies : 76- 108 MHz
Max power : N/A

Wireless Charger :

Manufacturer :

**FORYOU MULTIMEDIA ELECTRONICS
CO., LTD, No.1,North Shangxia Road,
Dongjiang Hi-tech, Industry Park 516005,**

**HUIZHOU GUANGDONG PROVINCE
P.R., China**

Operating Frequencies : 125kHz
Max power : 15W

REACH

Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH) is a European Union regulation adopted to improve the protection of human health and the environment from the risks that can be posed by chemicals. Visit www.opel.com for further information and for access to the Article 33 communication.

Software update

The Infotainment system can download and install selected software updates over a wireless connection.

Note

The availability of these over-the-air vehicle software updates varies by vehicle and country. Find more information on our website.

Remote device management and remote software and firmware updates

As an integral part of the service related to the performance of subscribed connected service contracts, necessary

device management and necessary software and firmware updates related to the software and firmware for the named connected service will be performed remotely, in particular by using over-the-air technology.

For this, a secure radio network connection between the vehicle and the device management server will be established when ignition is switched on and a mobile network is available. Depending on the equipment of the vehicle, connection configuration must be set to Connected vehicle to allow the establishment of the radio network connection.

Irrespective of a valid connected service subscription, remote product security or product safety related device management and software and firmware updates will be performed when the processing is necessary for the compliance with a legal obligation to which the manufacturer is subject (e.g. applicable product liability law, emergency call regulation) or when the processing is necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the respective vehicle users and passengers. The establishment of a secure radio network connection and the related remote updates are not affected by privacy settings and will be performed in

principal after an initiation by the vehicle user following a respective notification. The system is able to notify receipt of an update as soon as it is connected to an exterior Wi-Fi network or a mobile network. Large updates are downloaded only via the Wi-Fi network.

The availability of an update is notified on the Info Display at the end of a trip with an option of immediate installation or postponement of installation.

The installation time is variable and can take several minutes with a maximum of about 30 minutes. A notification will give an estimate of the duration and a description of the update.

Updates can be checked manually via the Info Display. Follow the onscreen prompts in the respective menu.

Note

Steps for downloading and installing updates may vary by vehicle.

For safety reasons and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the installation must be carried out with the ignition on without starting the engine. The installation cannot be carried out in the following cases:

- engine running
- emergency call in progress
- insufficient vehicle battery charge

- charging the vehicle's high voltage battery

Note

During the installation process, the vehicle may not be operational. If the update has failed, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Registered trademarks

Apple Inc.

Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc.

App Store® and iTunes Store® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc. iPhone®, iPod®, iPod touch®, iPod nano®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Google Inc.

Android™ and Google Play™ Store are trademarks of Google Inc.

Velcro Companies

Velcro® is a registered trademark of Velcro Companies.

Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA.

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Emergency Call Data Recording And Privacy

Data processing

All processing of personal information by the emergency call function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with article 6.1, paragraph d) of regulation 2016/679.

The processing of personal information is strictly limited to the requirements of the emergency call function used with the European emergency call number.

The emergency call function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power

source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file recording technical data related to the system's operation.

The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the emergency number.

Data storage

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operation mode. The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored. When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Access to data

You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information

not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

If you want to claim your abovementioned rights please contact us per email at privacyrights@mpsa.com. For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on our website.

Event Data Recorders

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Control units process data which is received by vehicle sensors, for example, or which they generate themselves or exchange amongst themselves. Some control units are necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle, others assist you while you drive (driver assistance systems), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.

The following contains general information about data processing in

the vehicle. You will find additional information as to which specific data is uploaded, stored and passed on to third parties and for what purpose in your vehicle under the key word Data Protection closely linked to the references for the affected functional characteristics in the relevant owner's manual or in the general terms of sale. These are also available online.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data for operation of the vehicle.

This data includes, for example:

- vehicle status information (e.g. speed, movement delay, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, "seat belts fastened" display)
- ambient conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor)

As a rule such data is transient and is not stored for longer than an operational cycle, and only processed on board the vehicle itself. Often control units include data storage (including the vehicle key). This is used to allow information to be documented temporarily or permanently on vehicle condition, component stress, maintenance requirements and technical events and errors.

Depending on technical equipment levels, the data stored is as follows:

- system component operating states (e.g. fill level, tire pressure, battery status)
- faults and defects in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- system reactions in special driving situations (e.g. triggering of an airbag, actuation of the stability control systems)
- information on events damaging the vehicle
- for electric vehicles the amount of charge in the high voltage battery, estimated range

In special cases (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to save data that would otherwise just be volatile.

When you use services (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the operating data saved can be read together with the vehicle identification number and used where necessary. Staff working for the service network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. breakdown services) can read the data from the vehicle.

The same applies to warranty work and quality assurance measures.

Data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port prescribed by law in the vehicle. The operating data read documents the technical condition of the vehicle or individual components and assists with fault diagnosis, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement.

This data, in particular information on component stress, technical events, operator errors and other faults, is transmitted to the manufacturer where appropriate, together with the vehicle identification number. The manufacturer is also subject to product liability.

The manufacturer potentially also uses operating data from vehicles for product recalls. This data can also be used to check customer warranty and guarantee claims.

Fault memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service company when carrying out servicing or repairs or at your request.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and custom settings can be stored in the vehicle and changed or reset at any time.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- seat and steering wheel position settings

- chassis and air conditioning settings
- custom settings such as interior lighting

You can input your own data in the infotainment functions for your vehicle as part of the selected features.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- multimedia data such as music, videos or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system
- address book data for use with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system
- input destinations
- data on the use of online services

This data for comfort and infotainment functions can be stored locally in the vehicle or be kept on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player). Data that you have input yourself can be deleted at any time.

This data can only be transmitted out of the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in accordance with the settings selected by you.

Smartphone integration, e.g. Android Auto or Apple CarPlay

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle so that you can control it via the controls integrated in the vehicle. The smartphone image and sound can be output via the multimedia system in this case. At the same time, specific information is transmitted to your smartphone.

Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as position data, day / night mode and other general vehicle information. For more information, please see the operating instructions for the vehicle / infotainment system.

Integration allows selected smartphone apps to be used, such as navigation or music playback. No further integration is possible between smartphone and vehicle, in particular active access to vehicle data. The nature of further data processing is determined by the provider of the app used. Whether you can define settings, and if so which ones, is dependent on the app in question and your smartphone's operating system.

Online services

If your vehicle has a radio network connection, this allows data to be exchanged between your vehicle and

other systems. The radio network connection is made possible by means of a transmitter device in your vehicle or a mobile device provided by you (e.g. a smartphone). Online functions can be used via this radio network connection. These include online services and applications / apps provided to you by the manufacturer or other providers.

Proprietary services

In the case of the manufacturer's online services, the relevant functions are described by the manufacturer in an appropriate location (e.g. Owner's Manual, the manufacturer's website) and the associated data protection information is provided. Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data exchange for this purpose takes place via a protected connection, e.g. using the manufacturer's IT systems provided for the purpose. Collection, processing and use of personal data for the purposes of preparation of services take place solely on the basis of legal permission, e.g. in the case of a legally prescribed emergency communication system or a contractual agreement, or by virtue of consent.

You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (which are subject to charges to some extent) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire radio

network connection. This does not include statutory functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Onboard fuel consumption meter (OBFCM)

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.

In accordance to Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance travelled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable).

These data are used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO₂ emission of the new vehicles in an anonymized and aggregated way.

The collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose can be refused. This can be done by contacting Customer Care Center (contact details available on brand website).

Third party services

If you make use of online services from other providers (third parties), these services are subject to the liability and

data protection and usage conditions of the provider in question.

The manufacturer frequently has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.

Therefore, please note the nature, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data within the scope of third party services provided by the service provider in question.

In case of an accident

This vehicle is fitted with an event data recorder. This system gathers and records certain vehicle data over a short period (a few seconds) before, during and after an event such as an accident or collision. In order to gain a better understanding of the circumstances surrounding the event, the system records how the vehicle's various systems are operating at the time of the event, including:

- any deployment of a restraint system (airbag, seat belt, etc)
- the status of all seat belts (fastened / unfastened)
- the contact or intensity of pressure exerted on the pedal(s) engaged by the driver
- the speed of the vehicle

- the status of some driving and driver assistance systems.

The following are not recorded:

- data on normal driving conditions, in other words data not directly related to the event
- personal data on the driver and any other occupants
- the geographical location of the vehicle at the time of the event.

The reading of data recorded by the event data recorder requires both:

- access to the interior of the vehicle or to the event data recorder
- special equipment that can be purchased from the manufacturer Bosch.

Aside from the vehicle manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement agencies may access this data in order to analyse the event.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and immobiliser. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote

controls for door locking / unlocking and starting. RFID technology in Opel vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Opel system containing personal information.

Protecting Measures Against Cyber Attacks

Depending to the model, your vehicle may be equipped with a system that detects cyber attack attempts or unexpected events for cybersecurity point of view . This system, when fitted inside the vehicle, is working for the entire life cycle of the vehicle. When cybersecurity events are detected (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations), log files are generated, temporally stored inside your vehicle and then sent to the Manufacturer's infrastructure by "Over-The-Air" connectivity. Those log files are analyzed by the Manufacturer's Security Operational Center (SOC) to define appropriate measures protecting vehicles from malicious interactions with electronic components. Such measures could be the deployment of software and firmware updates.

The purpose of this system is thus to enhance cybersecurity measures settled inside vehicles.

It also directly participates to the securitization of your vehicle's connectivity and allows the correct performance of online services activated on your vehicle . Ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing are described within the European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis (see below).

Applying Legal Obligations And Respective Requirements

This list can change according to European regulations. Please consult online this document to be sure to have the up-to-date list of applying regulations in EU. Depending of the date of the Type Approval of the vehicle, some regulations cannot apply.

Generally, these legal obligations can disclose data independtly of the in-vehicle privacy settings.

eCall - Emergency Call

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.

This function, where operational, is provided through the Public Emergency service of each country where you are driving. It doesn't matter where you

bought your vehicle or where it is registered.

In the event of a significant impact or a serious accident recorded by the DEVICE on the VEHICLE, with consequent shutdown of the VEHICLE itself, a phone-call is automatically forwarded from the VEHICLE to the respective Public Emergency number (call to '112' inside Europe), together with the transmission of the minimum data needed for identification and location of the VEHICLE (i.e. your exact location, the time of the accident, your vehicle's identification number and direction of travel). This information is only transmitted from your vehicle in the event of a serious accident ; it allows the Public Emergency Services to assess and manage your situation. The Public Emergency Services will act according to local legislation and its own operating procedures. Inside Europe, the 112- based eCall service is a public service of general interest and should therefore be accessible free of charge to all consumers.

According to Regulation (EU) 2015/758, this system is mandatory for all new types of vehicle approved for manufacture after 31 March 2018. The eCall system is only activated if your vehicle is involved in a serious accident.

The rest of the time the system remains inactive. This means that when you are simply driving your vehicle, no permanent tracking (registering your car's position or monitoring your driving) or transmission of data takes place on behalf of this regulatory service.

OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter

This SERVICE is provided for 15 years after the vehicle is firstly put into circulation.

In accordance to Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance travelled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable). These data are used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles, in an anonymized and aggregated way.

As mentioned in OBFCM regulation, the CUSTOMER can refuse the collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose. This can be done by contacting Customer Care Center (contact information available on

the brand website available for your country).

SLI - Speed Limit Information

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE, only for vehicles sold inside the Europe Market. Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 on the approval and market surveillance of motor vehicles and their trailers, and of systems, components and separate technical units intended for such vehicles dated 30 May 2018, as amended by the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144 dated 27 November 2019 and the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2021/1958 dated 23 June 2021 (together the "GSR V2 Regulations"), car manufacturers are required to equip new vehicles sold in Europe with various systems aiming at guaranteeing the overall safety of such vehicles. As per Article 6 of the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144, such systems must include an "intelligent speed assistance" system (hereinafter "ISA") that provides the applicable speed limit to the driver for at least 90% of the total distance and for at least 80% of the distance driven on each of the three road types (urban roads and streets, non-urban roads, and motorways/ expressways/dual carriageways).

SLI function provides the driver with the applicable speed limit on the road where driver travels. SLI function aims to improve the safety by allowing the vehicle to display in real time applicable speed limit, even when external conditions don't permit it (e.g. weather, sign hidden by another vehicle). The applicable speed limit is retrieved from the front camera of the vehicle and maybe completed through Over- The-Air communication system to improve the reliability of information according to the vehicle definition. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the vehicle. As required by the "GSR V2 Regulations", this SLI feature is activated by default at key on, but can be partially deactivated at every time by the user of the vehicle, given that the driver may cut the audible warning function from the vehicle's settings available from the central touch screen. This will not impact the visual warning function that will stay active and may still require Over- The-Air data transmission of current vehicle's position for accurate speed limit detection.

Depending on the model of your vehicle, it may be possible to also fully cut the SLI function (i.e. to stop speed limit detection and speed limit warning function) from the central touch screen, and thus cut the data transmission for the current trip.

Mileage disclosure to Car-Pass association

(Only for vehicles registered in Belgium)

This disclosure is active in Belgium only, as an answer to a Belgium law in order to prevent vehicle mileage fraud (Belgium law of 28th november 2018, applicable from 01/01/2020). It is provided lifetime, as long as Car-Pass association requests the data.

It consists in providing 4 times a year the mileage of any vehicle registered in Belgium to Car-Pass, an association delegated by belgian authorities to collect and control this data.

This mileage is collected over-the-air by Stellantis if another connected service already uses it. This data is transmitted to Car-Pass association, upon request of this organism.

For more information, please refer to the Car-Pass privacy policy (<https://www.car-pass.be/en/privacy-policy>).

Data Use - Product Quality Improvement

You acknowledge and agree that to improve the quality of the products produced by STELLANTIS AUTO SAS as a car maker, your Vehicle Data (as defined in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services, see below) – excluding the geolocation of the vehicle – are transferred to the car maker for the purpose of anomalies avoidance, aggregated data analysis for product improvement or creation of new products. Further information on this, and ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing, are described in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services (see below).

European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis

The Privacy Policy for Connected Vehicles (“Privacy Policy”) applies to the Personal Data we process about users of the connected services through our Vehicle, our Websites or Application who have signed the General Conditions as a Customer or who are authorized by a Customer to access and use the connected services.

This Privacy Policy is drafted pursuant Article 13 of the EU Regulation 679/2016

and will help you understand better how we handle your information.

In this document, you will find some examples of how we process Personal Data, and Definitions referring to more detailed explanations (at the end this Privacy Policy). If you would like any clarifications regarding this Privacy Policy or how your data are processed, please send your request to: dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com This document is available on brand websites, in the section dedicated to connected services.

It is also available at the following link: <https://connected-vehicles-privacy.stellantis.com/>

Index

Numerics		Automatic crash notification	191
12V Battery	215	Automatic light control	47
A		Automatic operation of electric parking brake off	82
Access to engine compartment	211	Automatic Park Assist	171
Accessories and vehicle modifications.....	206	Automatic transmission	115
Active emergency braking	87, 115	Automatic transmission (ICE, Hybrid 48 V)	115
Active Emergency Braking (AEB)	156	Automatic transmission PHEV	117
Adaptive cruise control (ACC)	150	Autostop	86, 111
AdBlue	83, 122	B	
Adding coolant fluid	214	Battery discharge protection	52, 112
Adding washer fluid	214	Battery Preconditioning	137
Adjustable air vents	93	BEV Engine	212
Advanced lane keep assist	84	BlueInjection	122
Air Conditioner Maintenance	218	Bodywork-Exterior Care	224
Air conditioning regular operation	94	Brake and clutch fluid	210
Air intake	94	Brake assist	114
Air vents	93	C	
Airbag and belt tensioners	80	Cabin Air Filter	218
Airbag deactivation	32, 80	Capacities	237
Airbag label	28	Catalytic converter	122
Anti-Slip Regulator (ASR)	162	Central locking system	9
Anti-theft alarm system	12	Centre console lighting	51
Anti-theft locking system	12	Centre console storage	53
Antilock brake system	81, 82	Changing tire and wheel size	192
Antilock brake system (ABS)	81, 163	Charging	132
Apply footbrake	86	Charging cable	129
Armrest	25	Charging cable connected	84
Ashtrays	54	Charging status	136
Assist and SOS	190	Charging system	80
Assistance call	191	Charging types	129
Automatic anti-dazzle	18		

Checking brake fluid	215
Checking Oil Level	213
Child locks	10
Child restraint installation locations	36
Child restraint systems	28
Child restraints	33
Cold protection covers	207
Compartment Filter	218
Control indicators	77
Control of the vehicle	143
Controls	41
Convex shape	17
Cruise control	148
Cupholders	53
Curtain airbag system	31
Customization	99
D	
Danger, Warnings and Cautions	3
Daytime running lights	46
Decals	225
Declaration of conformity	239
DEF	122
Deflation detection system	83
Diesel Engine	212
Diesel exhaust fluid	122
Diesel fuel system bleeding	210
Display operation	94
Door open	81, 86
Door panel storage	55
Doors	63
Drive modes	120
Drive Selector	119

Driver alert	86
Driver assistance systems	75
Driver Information Centre	72
Driving characteristics and towing tips	140
Driving hints	143

E

Engine oil pressure	85
e-SAVE	73, 87
eCall - Emergency Call	247
Electric adjustment	18
Electric parking brake	82, 113
Electric parking brake fault	81
Electronic climate control system	88
Electronic key system	7
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	163
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system	83
Emergencies	143
Emergency call	190, 242
Emergency call data recording and privacy	242
End-of-life vehicle recovery	208
Engine Air Filter	218
Engine Compartment	211
Engine coolant	214
Engine coolant temperature	83
Engine coolant temperature gauge	76
Engine data	232
Engine exhaust	122
Engine identification	230
Engine oil	210

Engine Oil Filter	218
Engine Oil Level Monitor	76
Entry lighting	51
Event data recorders	243
Exhaust filter	83
Exit lighting	51
Exterior lights	45, 224
Exterior mirrors	17

F

First aid	62
First aid kit	62
Fixed air vents	93
Folding mirrors	17
Forward Collision Warning (FCW)	160
Front airbag system	30
Front seats	20
Front storage	53
Fuel	125
Fuel consumption - CO ₂ - Emissions ..	127
Fuel for diesel engines	125
Fuel for petrol engines	125
Fuel gauge	74
Fuses	219

G

Gauges	74, 76
Gear shifting	82
General information	128, 139, 206
Glovebox	53

H

Hand brake	113
Hazard warning flashers	47

Hazard Warning Lights	190	Interior lighting	50	N	
Head restraints	18	Interior mirrors	18	New vehicle running-in	108
Head-up display	95	J		O	
Headlight flash	46	Jump starting	201	Odometer	74
Headlight Height Adjustment	46	K		Opel Connect	191
Headlights	46	Keys	6	Overrun cut-off	110
Headlights when driving abroad	46	Keys, locks	6	P	
Heated mirrors	17	L		Panoramic sunroof	52
Heated rear window	16	Lane Departure Warning (LDW)	168	Panoramic view system	174
Heated Seats	24	Lane keep assist	84	Parking assist	18, 84
Heated steering wheel	42	Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)	166	Parking brake	81, 82, 113
Heated windscreen	16	Lane Positioning Assist (LPA)	169	Parking lights	48
Heating	16	Lashing eyes	61	Pedestrian safety alert	42
High beam	45, 47	Light switch	45	Pedestrian safety alert fault	87
High beam assist	47	Load compartment	57	Personalisation	95, 96
High Gloss Paint	225	Load compartment cover	57	Petrol Engine	211
High voltage battery	131, 208	Loading information	62	PHEV Engine	212
High voltage battery gauge	76	Locking, automatic	8	Plug and Charge	137
High voltage battery temperature high	86	Low beam	86	Post Collision Braking System (PCBS)	162
Hill start assist	183	Low fuel	84	Power button	43, 109
Horn	42	M		Power indicator gauge	76
Hybrid system fault	81	Malfunction indicator light	85	Power outlets	55
I		Manual anti-dazzle	18	Power seat adjustment	22
Identification plate	229	Manual seat adjustment	21	Power steering	110
Ignition switch positions	42	Massage	25	Power windows	14
Immobilizer	13	Matrix-LED headlights	48	Powerflow	95
Indicators	77	Menu	98	Preheating	83
Inductive charging	56	MHEV Engine	213	Profiles	98
Info Display	94	Misted light covers	48	Programmable charging	135
Instrument panel illumination control	50	Multimedia System	102	Propulsion Type	3
Instrument panel overview	71				
Interior care	225				

Q			
Quickheat	91		
R			
Radio	75, 101		
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)	13, 246		
Radio remote control	7		
REACH	241		
Reading lights	51		
Rear Cross Traffic Alert	177		
Rear floor storage cover	60		
Rear fog light	47, 87		
Rear Vision Camera (RVC)	178		
Rear window wiper and washer	45		
Recommended fluids and lubricants ..	210		
Reduced Engine Power	84		
Refuelling	126		
Regenerative braking	115		
Registered trademarks	242		
Reversing lights	48		
Roadside assistance	191		
Roof	52		
Roof load	62		
Roof rack	138		
S			
Safety net	61		
Scheduled Servicing	209		
Seat belt reminder	28		
Seat belts	26		
Selective catalytic reduction	122		
Selector	115, 117		
Service	94, 208		
		Service display	76
		Service information	208
		Service vehicle soon	80
		Side airbag system	31
		Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA)	164
		Sidights	46
		Software update	241
		Spare Wheel	194
		Speed Limiter	146
		Speedometer	74
		Starting and operating	108
		Starting the engine	109
		Steering	41
		Steering wheel adjustment	41
		Steering wheel controls	41
		Stop engine	81
		Stop-start system	111
		Storage	53
		Storage compartments	53
		Sun visors	51
		Sunroof	52
		Sunvisor lights	51
		Symbols	3
		T	
		Tachometer	74
		Tailgate	63
		Temperature preconditioning	92
		Three-point seat belt	33
		Tire chains	222
		Tire deflation detection system	221
		Tire pressure	220
		Tire pressures	220
		Tire repair kit	197
		Tools	193
		Tow bar	140
		Towing	203
		Towing another vehicle	204
		Towing equipment	140, 225
		Towing the vehicle	203
		Towing your vehicle	203
		Traffic Sign Assist (TSA)	183
		Traffic sign assistant	87
		Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)	186
		Trailer stability assist	142
		Trailer towing	139
		Tread depth	222
		Trip computer	75
		Turn lights	79
		U	
		Updating the system	99
		Upholstery	226
		USB port	56
		Using this manual	3
		V	
		Vehicle checks	209
		Vehicle data	231
		Vehicle data recording and privacy	242
		Vehicle dimensions	231
		Vehicle identification number	229
		Vehicle jack	192
		Vehicle locator lighting	52
		Vehicle messages	87
		Vehicle ready	84

Vehicle security	12
Vehicle storage	223
Vehicle to Load (V2L)	137
Vehicle tools	193

W

Warning chimes	88
Warning triangle	62
Warning Triangle Kit	192
Washer fluid	210
Wheel changing	193
Wheel covers	222
Wheels and tires	219
Wheels and Tires	238
Windows	14
Windscreen wiper and washer	43
Windshield	15
Winter tires	220
Wiper Blade Replacement	217

Driving innovation for tomorrow.

For over 50 years, **TotalEnergies** and **Stellantis** have shared a common vision of **performance, innovation, and mobility for the future.**

This long-standing partnership is built on close technical collaboration, from product design to after-sales service across official networks. By combining their expertise, the two companies have developed cutting-edge lubrication technologies tailored to the evolving needs of Opel powertrains.

The co-branded **Quartz Mopar** and **Quartz EV3R Mopar** ranges reflect this shared expertise. Specifically designed and **approved by Opel**, they include **high-performance engine oils** covering every Opel powertrain. Each formulation helps keep engines clean, reduce wear, and support fuel efficiency, ensuring smooth operation mile after mile, even under the most demanding conditions.

We're taking innovation further with **Quartz EV3R Mopar**, which introduces the **3R approach (Reduce, Reuse, Regenerate)** using regenerated base oils and a recyclable bottle, while delivering the same performance as standard Quartz oils, with a lower impact compared to our conventional products.

Your authorized Opel repairer will recommend the right oil for your model and service schedule. Available and **recommended within Opel authorized after-sales networks**, Quartz Mopar offers confidence, durability, and proven technology backed by decades of partnership.



QUARTZ
ENGINE OIL



MOPAR

O P E L recommends **TotalEnergies**



O P E L



TotalEnergies

OFFICIAL **PARTNERS**



www.opel.com

Copyright by Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim, Germany.

The information contained in this publication is effective as of the date indicated below. Opel Automobile GmbH reserves the right to make changes to the technical specifications, features and design of the vehicles relative to the information in this publication as well as changes to the publication itself.

Edition: February 2026, Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim.

Printed on chlorine-free bleached paper.

OASTRLO2602en-1

